SC-DX100
SC-DX103
SC-DX105

# DVD Camcorder

## user manual

# DVD 攝錄放影機

## 使用者手冊

imagine the possibilities

Thank you for purchasing this Samsung product.
To receive more complete service, please register your product at

www.samsung.com/global/register

想像可能

感謝您購買 Samsung 產品。
要獲得更為全面的服務，請透過以下網站註冊產品：

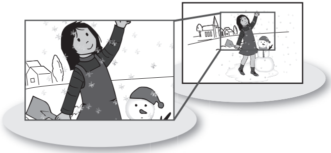
www.samsung.com/global/register

SAMSUNG

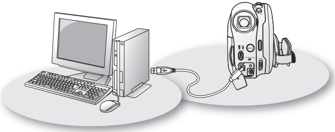
# key features of your DVD camcorder

**3 1/2 inch DVD disc camcorder**
DVD-VIDEO recording with 3 1/2 inch (8cm) DVD-RW/+RW/-R/+R DL (Dual Layer) discs.

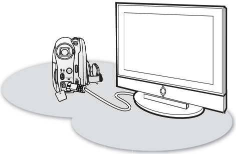
**2.7” wide (16:9) LCD screen (112K pixels)**
The 2.7” wide (16:9) LCD screen provides excellent viewing clarity with improved resolution. The 112K pixels LCD screen rotates up to 270 degrees for multiple viewing angles providing sharp, detailed images for monitoring or playback, and the widescreen format makes shooting in 16:9 mode and composing shots even easier.



**Capture visions farther than the eye can see (34X optical/1200X digital zoom)**
Samsung’s powerful optical zoom lenses bring the world closer without sacrificing image quality. In addition, digital zoom interpolation means that extreme digital zooming is clearer, with less distortion than previous types of digital zooms.



**Viewing images on your PC and using PC CAM**
With DV Media PRO, you can view the recorded images on a PC and use PC cam function by connecting the DVD camcorder to a PC.
➥pages 91~98



**Voice Plus**
You can add your voice to the movie image by connecting the DVD camcorder to a TV.
➥page 89

# DVD 攝錄放影機的主要功能

**3 1/2 英吋 DVD 光碟攝錄放影機**
使用 3 1/2 英吋（8 公分）DVD-RW/+RW/-R/+R DL（雙層）光碟進行 DVD-VIDEO 錄製。

**2.7” 寬 (16:9) LCD 螢幕（112K 像素）**
2.7” 寬（16:9）LCD 螢幕可透過高解析度提供極佳的檢視清晰度。112K 像素 LCD 螢幕可最多旋轉 270 度以實現多檢視角度，以便在監視或播放時能夠提供清晰、詳細的影像，而且寬螢幕格式可以按 16:9 模式進行拍攝，使拍攝內容編寫更容易。

**拍攝畫面速度比人眼看得更快**
**（34 倍光學 /1200 倍數位縮放）**
Samsung 功能強大的光學縮放鏡頭會將世界變得更近，而不會降低影像品質。此外，數位縮放插補表示極限數位縮放更清晰，比以前的數位縮放類型失真更少。

**檢視電腦上的影像，並使用電腦相機功能**
透過使用 DV Media PRO，您可以檢視電腦上的已錄制影像，並可透過將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接至電腦來使用電腦相機功能。➥ 第 91~98 頁

**Voice Plus**
透過將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接至電視，您可以將您的聲音新增至影片影像。➥ 第 89 頁

# safety warnings

What the icons and signs in this user manual mean:

| | |
|---|---|
| ⚠ WARNING | Means that death or serious personal injury is a risk. |
| ⚠ CAUTION | Means that there is a potential risk for personal injury or material damage. |
| ⚠ CAUTION | To reduce the risk of fire, explosion, electric shock, or personal injury when using your camcorder, follow these basic safety precautions: |
| ✎ | Means hints or referential pages that may be helpful when operating the camcorder. |

These warning signs are here to prevent injury to you and others. Please follow them explicitly. After reading this section, keep it in a safe place for future reference.

# precautions

**Warning!**

- This camcorder should always be connected to an AC outlet with a protective grounding connection.
- Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

**Caution**

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.
Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

If this power supply is used at 240V ac,
a suitable plug adaptor should be used.

**CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT**
**KLASSE 1 LASER PRODUKT**
**LUOKAN 1 LASER LAITE**
**KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT**
**PRODUCTO LASER CLASE 1**

# 安全警告

本使用者手冊中圖示和標誌的含義：

| | |
|---|---|
| ⚠ 警告 | 表示有造成死亡或嚴重傷害的危險。 |
| ⚠ 注意 | 表示有潛在的人員傷害或材料損毀之危險。 |
| ⚠ 注意 | 在使用攝錄放影機時，要降低火災、爆炸、觸電或人身傷害的危險，請遵循下面這些基本安全注意事項： |
| ✎ | 表示可能有助於操作攝錄放影機的提示或參考頁。 |

在此提供這些警告圖示可避免對您及他人造成傷害。
請嚴格遵循。在閱讀本部分之後 請將其妥善保管以供日後參考。

# 注意事項

**警告！**

- 此攝錄放影機應總是與帶有保護接地連接的交流電源插座連接。
- 不應將電池放在太陽底下或火爐旁邊等高熱地方。

**注意**

若沒有正確更換電池，將會有爆炸的危險。
請使用相同類型的電池來更換。

若您使用交流電源 240V 的電源供應器，
請使用適合的插頭適配器。

**第一類雷射製品**
**KLASSE 1 LASER PRODUKT**
**LUOKAN 1 LASER LAITE**
**KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT**
**PRODUCTO LASER CLASE 1**

# important information on use

## BEFORE USING THIS CAMCORDER

- **This DVD camcorder records video in MPEG2 format in the DVD camcorder mode, MPEG4 format in the digital camera mode and at Standard Resolution (SD-VIDEO).**
- **Please note that this DVD camcorder is not compatible with other digital video.**
- **Before recording important video, make a trial recording.**
  Play back your trial recording to make sure the video and audio have been recorded properly.
- **The recorded contents cannot be compensated for:**
  - Samsung cannot compensate for any damage caused when a recording cannot be played back because of a defect in the DVD camcorder or memory card. Samsung cannot be responsible for your recorded video and audio.
  - Recorded contents may be lost due to a mistake when handling this DVD camcorder or memory card, etc. Samsung shall not be responsible for compensation for damages due to the loss of recorded contents.
- **Make a backup of important recorded data.**
  Protect your important recorded data by copying the files to PC. We also recommend you copy it from your PC to other recording media for storage. Refer to the software installation and USB connection guide.
- **Copyright: Please note that this DVD camcorder is intended for personal use only.**
  Data recorded on the card in this DVD camcorder using other digital/analog media or devices is protected by the copyright act and cannot be used without permission of the owner of copyright, except for personal enjoyment. Even if you record an event such as a show, performance or exhibition for personal enjoyment, it is strongly recommended that you obtain permission beforehand.

# 有關使用的重要資訊

## 在使用本攝錄放影機之前

- **此 DVD 攝錄放影機在 DVD 攝錄放影機模式下會以 MPEG2 格式錄製視訊，而在數位相機模式會以 MPEG4 格式和標準解析度 (SD-VIDEO) 進行錄製。**
- **請注意，本 DVD 攝錄放影機與其他數位視訊不相容。**
- **在錄製重要視訊之前，要試錄。**
  播放試錄的內容，以確保視訊和音訊都已正確錄製。
- **錄製的內容無法因以下原因進行賠償：**
  - Samsung 不會對由於 DVD 攝錄放影機或記憶卡有缺陷而導致錄製內容無法播放所引起的任何損失承擔任何責任。Samsung 不會對錄製的視訊和音訊承擔任何責任。
  - 錄製內容可能由於處理此 DVD 攝錄放影機或記憶卡等內容時遺失。Samsung 將不會對由於錄製內容遺失而造成的損失進行賠償。
- **備份重要的錄製資料**。
  透過將檔案複製到電腦上來保護重要的錄製資料。我們還建議您將資料複製到電腦或其他錄製媒體進行儲存。請參閱軟體安裝和 USB 連接指南。
- **版權：請注意，本 DVD 攝錄放影機僅設計來供個人使用。**
  使用其他數位／類比媒體或裝置在此 DVD 攝錄放影機的記憶卡上錄製的資料受版權法保護，未經版權所有者的允許不得使用，個人欣賞除外。即使您錄製諸如展覽、表演或展示等活動進行個人欣賞，也強烈建議您事先獲得允許。

## ABOUT THIS USER MANUAL

- **This user manual covers models SC-DX100/ DX103/DX105.** SC-DX103/ DX105 have two storage media, Disc and Card. Although the external appearances of SC-DX100/DX103/DX105 are different, they operate in the same way.
- Illustrations of model SC-DX105 are used in this user manual.
- The displays in this user manual may not be exactly the same as those you see on the LCD screen.
- Designs and specifications of the camcorder and other accessories are subject to change without any notice.

## (▭, ◎) MARKS BESIDE HEADINGS

- **Some functions of this DVD camcorder are unavailable with memory card or disc.** Refer to the marks at right above each function to identify whether the memory card or disc is compatible with the function. Refer to these marks and identify the functions and operation to match the memory card or disc you use.

## NOTES REGARDING A TRADEMARK

- All the trade names and registered trademarks mentioned in this manual or other documentation provided with your Samsung product are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- Windows® is registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation, registered in the United States and other countries.
- Macintosh is the trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.
- All the other product names mentioned herein may be the trademark or registered trademarks of their respective companies.
- Furthermore, “TM” and “R” are not mentioned in each case in this manual.

DOLBY DIGITAL STEREO CREATOR

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
- “Dolby” and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

**Portions of this software are copyright © 2006 The Free Type Project. Website: http://www.freetype.org. All rights reserved.**

## 關於此使用者手冊

- **本使用者手冊包括型號 SC-DX100/ DX103/DX105。** SC-DX103/ DX105 有兩個儲存媒體、光碟和卡。儘管 SC-DX100/DX103/DX105 的外觀有所不同，但它們的操作方式相同。
- 在本使用者手冊中使用 SC-DX105 型號的圖示說明。
- 本使用者手冊中的顯示可能不如您在 LCD 螢幕上看到的那樣準確。
- 攝錄放影機和其他附件的設計和規格若有變更，恕不另行通知。

## (▭, ◎) 標題旁的標記

- **此 DVD 攝錄放影機的某些功能對記憶卡或光碟不適用。** 請參閱每種功能右上方的標記，以識別記憶卡或光碟是否與此功能相容。參閱這些標記並識別符合記憶卡或所用光碟的各功能與操作。

## 關於商標的注意事項

- 本手冊或其他 Samsung 產品說明文件中提及的所有產品名稱和註冊商標是其各自所有者的商標或註冊商標。
- Windows® 是 Microsoft Corporation 在美國或其他國家註冊的註冊商標或商標。
- Macintosh 是 Apple Computer, Inc. 的商標。
- 此處提及的所有其他產品名稱可能是其各個公司的商標或註冊商標。
- 此外，本手冊中的各項範例均未提及「TM」和「R」。

DOLBY DIGITAL STEREO CREATOR

- 經 Dolby Laboratories 授權製造。
- 「Dolby」和雙 D 符號是 Dolby Laboratories 的商標。

**軟體部分的版權是 copyright 2006 The Free Type Project。
網站：http://www.freetype.org。
版權所有，翻版必究。**

# precautions when using

## IMPORTANT NOTE

- **Handle the liquid crystal display (LCD) with care:**
  - The LCD is a very delicate display device: Do not press its surface with force, hit it or prick it with a sharp object.
  - If you push the LCD surface, unevenness in display may occur. If unevenness does not disappear, turn the camcorder off, wait for a few moments, then turn it on again.
  - Do not place the camcorder with the open LCD screen down.
  - Close the LCD monitor when not using the camcorder.
- **Liquid crystal display :**
  - The LCD screen will be slightly dimmer than usual when the camcorder is at low temperature, as in cold areas, or immediately after power is turned on. Normal brightness will be restored when the temperature inside the camcorder rises. This has no effect on the images in the storage media, so there is no cause for concern.
- **Hold the DVD camcorder correctly:**
  - Do not hold the DVD camcorder by the LCD monitor when lifting it: the viewfinder or LCD monitor could detach and the DVD camcorder may fall.
- **Do not subject the DVD camcorder to impact:**
  - This DVD camcorder is a precision machine. Take great care that you do not strike it against a hard object or let it fall.
  - Do not use the DVD camcorder on a tripod in a place where it is subject to severe vibrations or impact.
- **No sand or dust!**
  Fine sand or dust entering the DVD camcorder or AC power adaptor could cause malfunctions or defects.
- **No water or oil!**
  Water or oil entering the DVD camcorder or AC power adaptor could cause electric shock, malfunctions or defects.
- **Heat on surface of product:**
  The surface of the DVD camcorder will be slightly warm when in use, but this does not indicate a fault.
- **Be careful of ambient temperature:**
  - Using the DVD camcorder in a place where the temperature is over 60°C (140°F) or under 0°C (32°F) will result in abnormal recording/playback.
  - Do not leave the DVD camcorder on a beach or in a closed vehicle where the temperature is very high for a long time: This could cause a malfunction.
- **Do not point directly at the sun:**
  - If direct sunlight strikes the lens, the DVD camcorder could malfunction or a fire could occur.
  - Do not leave the DVD camcorder with the LCD screen exposed to direct sunlight: This could cause a malfunction.
- **Do not use the DVD camcorder near TV or radio:**
  - This could cause noise to appear on the TV screen or in radio broadcasts.

# 使用時的注意事項

## 重要注意事項

- **細心處理液晶顯示器 (LCD)：**
  - LCD 是非常精密的顯示裝置：切勿用力壓其表面，或使用尖銳的物件擊打或刺戳。
  - 如果您按壓 LCD 表面，可能會在顯示時出現不平現象。如果不平現象不消失，請關閉攝錄放影機，等待片刻後再次開啟。
  - 切勿使開啟的 LCD 螢幕向下放置攝錄放影機。
  - 在不使用攝錄放影機時關閉 LCD 顯示器。
- **液晶顯示：**
  - 當攝錄放影機在溫度較低的環境（如在寒冷地區）時，LCD 螢幕會比正常時稍暗，或在開啟電源後立即變暗。當攝錄放影機內部的溫度上升時，會恢復到原來的亮度。這對儲存媒體中的影像沒有什麼影響，因此無需顧慮。
- **正確把持 DVD 攝錄放影機：**
  - 在舉起時，切勿握住 LCD 顯示器旁邊的 DVD 攝錄放影機：取景器或 LCD 顯示器可能會分離，DVD 攝錄放影機可能會摔落。
- **切勿撞擊 DVD 攝錄放影機：**
  - 此 DVD 攝錄放影機是精密器械。要特別小心，不要讓其撞擊硬物或摔落。
  - 切勿在嚴重振動或撞擊的地方將 DVD 攝錄放影機放在三角架上使用。
- **要避免沙塵！**
  細沙或灰塵進入 DVD 攝錄放影機或交流電源適配器會引起故障。
- **要避免水或油！**
  水或油進入 DVD 攝錄放影機或交流電源適配器會引起觸電或故障。
- **產品表面變熱：**
  在使用時，DVD 攝錄放影機表面會輕微變熱，便這並不表示有故障。
- **注意環境溫度：**
  - 在溫度高於 60˚C（140˚F）或低於 0˚C（32˚F）的地方使用 DVD 攝錄放影機，可能會導致錄製／播放不正常。
  - 切勿將 DVD 攝錄放影機放在沙灘上或溫度長時間會很熱的封閉車輛中：否則可能會使其發生故障。
- **切勿直接對著太陽：**
  - 如果陽光直射鏡頭，DVD 攝錄放影機可能會出現故障或發生火災。
  - 在放置 DVD 攝錄放影機時，切勿讓陽光直射 LCD 螢幕：否則可能會使其發生故障。
- **切勿在電視或收音機旁邊使用 DVD 攝錄放影機：**
  - 這樣可能會導致在電視螢幕或收音機中出現噪音。

- **Do not use the DVD camcorder near strong radio waves or magnetism:**
  - If the DVD camcorder is used near strong radio waves or magnetism, such as near a radio transmitter or electric appliances, noise could enter video and audio that are being recorded. During playback of normally recorded video and audio, noise may also be present in picture and sound. At worst the DVD camcorder could malfunction.
- **Do not expose the DVD camcorder to soot or steam:**
  - Thick soot or steam could damage the DVD camcorder case or cause a malfunction.
- **Do not use the DVD camcorder near corrosive gas:**
  - If the DVD camcorder is used in a place where there is dense exhaust gas generated by gasoline or diesel engines, or corrosive gas such as hydrogen sulfide, the external or internal terminals could corrode, disabling normal operation, or the battery connecting terminals could corrode, so that power will not turn on.
- **Do not expose the DVD camcorder to insecticide:**
  Insecticide entering the DVD camcorder could dirty the lens in the laser pickup block, and in such a case the DVD camcorder might not operate normally. Turn the DVD camcorder off and cover it with vinyl sheet, etc. before using insecticide.
- **Do not use an optional 3 1/2 inch(8cm) CD lens cleaner:**
  - Cleaning the lens is not necessary when using this DVD camcorder in the usual way.
  - Using 3 1/2 inch(8cm) CD lens cleaner could cause this DVD camcorder to malfunction.
- **Do not touch the lens in the laser pickup block.**
  If you touch the lens in the laser pickup block directly it may cause a malfunction. The laser pickup block is not warranted for damage caused by misuse. Therefore, pay much attention when operating this camcorder.
- **Do not wipe the DVD camcorder body with benzene or a thinner:**
  - The coating of exterior could peel off or the case surface could deteriorate.
- **Keep the memory card out of reach of children to prevent swallowing.**

- **切勿在靠近強無線電波或強磁力的地方使用 DVD 攝錄放影機：**
  - 如果在靠近強無線電波或強磁力的地方使用 DVD 攝錄放影機，如無線電發射機或電器設備，則在錄製的視訊和音訊中可能會夾雜有噪音。在播放正常錄製的視訊和音訊時，在畫面和聲音中也可能會出現噪音。在最壞的情況下 DVD 攝錄放影機可能會出現故障。
- **切勿讓 DVD 攝錄放影機接觸煙灰或蒸汽：**
  - 濃厚的煙灰或蒸汽會損壞 DVD 攝錄放影機外殼或導致出現故障。
- **切勿在腐蝕性氣體旁邊使用 DVD 攝錄放影機：**
  - 如果在由汽油或柴油機產生的廢氣或腐蝕性氣體（如硫化氫）很濃的地方使用 DVD 攝錄放影機，外部或內容終端會被腐蝕，無法進行正常的操作，或電池連接終端會被腐蝕，致使無法開啟電源。
- **切勿將 DVD 攝錄放影機暴露於殺蟲劑：**
  進入 DVD 攝錄放影機的殺蟲劑可能弄臟激光拾音器片塊內的鏡頭，這樣以來就可能造成 DVD 操作不正常。在使用殺蟲劑之前關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機，並用軟塑膠板將其蓋住。
- **切勿使用選購的 3 1/2 英吋（8 公分）CD 鏡頭清潔器：**
  - 在正常使用此 DVD 攝錄放影機時無需清潔鏡頭。
  - 使用 3 1/2 英吋（8 公分）CD 鏡頭清潔器可能導致此 DVD 攝錄放影機出現故障。
- **切勿觸摸激光拾音器片塊內的鏡頭。**
  如果您直接觸摸激光拾音器片塊內的鏡頭，則可能使其產生故障。因誤用而導致激光拾音器片塊損壞的情況不受保固。因此，在操作此攝錄放影機時要多加注意。
- **切勿使用苯或稀釋劑擦拭 DVD 攝錄放影機機體：**
  - 外層會脫落或外殼表面會被損壞。
- **將記憶卡放在兒童接觸不到的地方，以防其吞下**。

# contents

**INTRODUCTION TO BASIC FEATURES** 06

**GETTING TO KNOW YOUR DVD CAMCORDER**
09 What is included with your DVD camcorder
10 Front and right view
11 Left side and bottom view
12 Rear and top view

**PREPARATION** 13
13 Remote control (SC-DX105 only)
14 Installing the button-type battery
15 Holding the DVD camcorder
16 Charging the battery pack
21 Basic DVD camcorder operation
22 Screen indicators
26 Using the display (|□|) button
26 Using the Joystick
27 Using the LCD screen
27 Using the viewfinder
28 Initial setting: OSD language & date and time

**DVD CAMCORDER MODE: BEFORE RECORDING** 30
30 Selecting the storage media (SC-DX103/DX105 only)
30 Inserting and removing a disc
32 Recordable time

# 目錄

**基本功能簡介** 06

**了解您的 DVD 攝錄放影機**
09 您的 .DVD 攝錄放影機的隨附物件
10 正視圖和右視圖
11 左視圖和底部視圖
12 後視圖和頂部視圖

**準備工作** 13
13 遙控器（僅適用於 SC-DX105）
14 安裝鈕扣電池
15 握住 DVD 攝錄放影機
16 電池組充電
21 基本的 DVD 攝錄放影機操作
22 螢幕指示器
26 使用 顯示 (|□|) 按鈕
26 使用搖桿
27 使用 LCD 螢幕
27 使用觀景窗
28 起始設定：OSD 語言與日期和時間

**DVD 攝錄放影機模式：錄製前** 30
30 選擇儲存媒體（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）
30 插入和取出光碟
32 可錄製的時間

**DVD CAMCORDER MODE: RECORDING/ PLAYBACK** 33
33 Recording movie images
35 Recording with ease for beginners (EASY.Q mode)
36 Capturing still images during movie image playback (SC-DX103/DX105 only)
37 Zooming
38 Playing movie images

**DVD CAMCORDER MODE: EDITING MOVIE IMAGE** 40
40 Deleting images
41 Deleting a section of a movie image (partial delete)
42 Playlist

**DVD CAMCORDER MODE: DISC MANAGE** 47
47 Disc finalize
49 Disc unfinalize
50 Disc format
51 Disc information

---

**DVD 攝錄放影機模式：錄製 / 播放** 33
33 錄製影片影像
35 初學者可以輕鬆地進行錄製((EASY.Q 模式))
36 在影片影像播放時拍攝靜態影像（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）
37 縮放
38 播放影片影像

**DVD 攝錄放影機模式：編輯影片影像** 40
40 刪除影像
41 刪除影片影像部分（部分刪除）
42 播放清單

**DVD 攝錄放影機模式：光碟管理** 47
47 光碟終結
49 光碟未終結
50 光碟格式
51 光碟資訊

# contents

**DIGITAL CAMERA MODE (SC-DX103/DX105 ONLY)** 52
- 52 Inserting and ejecting a memory card
- 55 Recordable time and number of images
- 56 Recording movie images
- 57 Taking photo images
- 58 Playing movie images
- 59 Viewing photo images
- 60 Protection from accidental erasure
- 61 Deleting images

**USING THE MENU ITEMS** 62
- 62 Handling menus
- 63 Menu items
- 65 Recording menu items
- 78 Playback menu item
- 78 Setting menu items

**PRINTING PHOTO IMAGES (SC-DX103/DX105 ONLY)** 83
- 83 DPOF print setting
- 84 Direct printing with a PictBridge

# 目錄

**數位相機模式（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）** 52
- 52 插入和彈出記憶卡
- 55 可錄製的時間和影像張數
- 56 錄製影片影像
- 57 拍攝相片影像
- 58 播放影片影像
- 59 檢視相片影像
- 60 保護以防意外刪除
- 61 刪除影像

**使用選單項目** 62
- 62 操作選單
- 63 選單項目
- 65 錄製選單項目
- 78 播放選單項目
- 78 設定選單項目

**列印相片影像（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）** 83
- 83 DPOF 列印設定
- 84 透過 PictBridge 直接列印

**CONNECTING TO AV DEVICES** 86
86 Connecting to a TV
88 Dubbing images on a VCR or DVD/HDD recorder
89 Using the voice plus

**CONNECTING TO A PC (SC-DX103/DX105 ONLY)** 90
90 System requirements
91 Installing DV Media PRO
93 Connecting the USB cable
94 Viewing the contents of storage media
96 Transferring files from the DVD camcorder to your PC
97 Using the PC cam function

**MAINTENANCE & ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**
98 Maintenance
99 Additional information
102 Using your DVD camcorder abroad

**TROUBLESHOOTING**
103 Troubleshooting

**SPECIFICATIONS** 112

**連接至 AV 裝置** 86
86 連接至電視
88 為 VCR 或 DVD/HDD 錄製機上的影像配音
89 使用 voice plus

**連接至電腦（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）** 90
90 系統需求
91 安裝 DV Media PRO
93 連接 USB 纜線
94 檢視儲存媒體的內容
96 將檔案從 DVD 攝錄放影機傳送到您的電腦
97 使用電腦相機功能

**維護和其他資訊**
98 維護
99 其他資訊
102 在國外使用您的 DVD 攝錄放影機

**故障排除**
103 故障排除

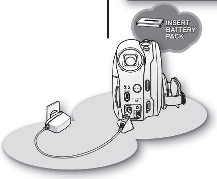
**規格** 112

# introduction to basic features

This chapter introduces the basic features of your DVD camcorder. See the reference pages below for more information.

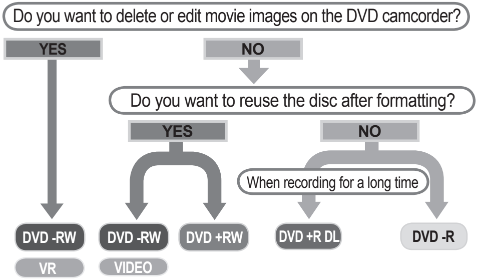
## Step 1 : Preparation

- Charging the battery pack ➥page 18
- Setting OSD language and the date/time ➥pages 28, 29
- Selecting the storage media (DISC and CARD) (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
  You can record movie and photo images.
  - You can take a photo only on the memory card. DVD discs do not support photo mode.
  - Refer to pages 52~54 for the supported memory cards before purchasing them.


INSERT
BATTERY
PACK

### When recording movie images on a DVD disc

Select the proper disc for use.


Do you want to delete or edit movie images on the DVD camcorder?
YES
NO
Do you want to reuse the disc after formatting?
YES
NO
When recording for a long time
DVD -RW
VR
DVD -RW
VIDEO
DVD +RW
DVD +R DL
DVD -R

- DVD+RW, DVD+R DL and DVD-R do not have Video or VR mode selection.
- You can delete the movie image only on a DVD-RW disc (VR mode).
- Selecting the desired disc and disc formatting. ➥pages 30-31

# 基本功能簡介

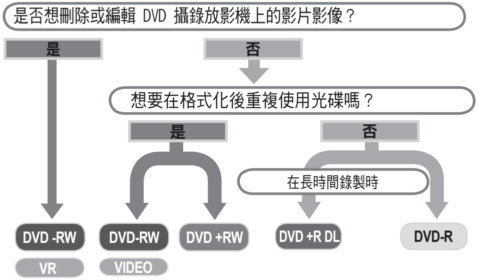
本節介紹 DVD 攝錄放影機的基本功能。要獲得更多資訊，請參閱以下參考頁面。

## 步驟 1：準備工作

- 電池組充電 ➥ 第 18 頁
- 設定 OSD 語言和日期 / 時間 ➥ 第 28、29 頁
- 選擇儲存媒體（DISC 和 CARD）
  （僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
  您可以錄製影片和相片影像。
  - 您僅能在記憶卡上拍攝相片。DVD 光碟不支援相片模式。
  - 在購買之前，請參閱第 52~54 頁以獲取與支援記憶卡相關的資訊。

### 在 DVD 光碟上錄製影片影像時

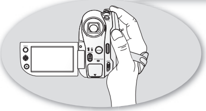
選擇供使用的正確光碟。


是否想刪除或編輯 DVD 攝錄放影機上的影片影像？
是
否
想要在格式化後重複使用光碟嗎？
是
否
在長時間錄製時
DVD -RW
VR
DVD-RW
VIDEO
DVD +RW
DVD +R DL
DVD-R

- DVD+RW、DVD+R DL 和 DVD-R 沒有 Video 或 VR 模式選擇。
- 您只能刪除 DVD-RW 光碟（VR 模式）上的影片影像。
- 選擇需要的光碟和光碟格式。➥ 第 30-31 頁

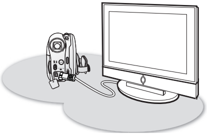
## Step 2 : Recording

- Recording the movie images ➥pages 33~37, 56
- Taking the photo images (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 57



## Step 3: Playing back / Editing

- Selecting an image to play back from the thumbnail index views ➥pages 38, 58~59
- Viewing playback from your DVD camcorder on your PC (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) or TV ➥pages 86~89, 96
- Editing movie images as your preference (Editing function is available only in DVD-RW(VR mode)) ➥pages 40~46



## Step 4: Viewing on DVD devices

You must finalize the disc in advance to view the movie images recorded on a DVD camcorder on other DVD devices. (Finalize is the function that allows a disc recorded on the DVD camcorder to be playable on DVD devices such as DVD players.)

## 步驟 2：錄製

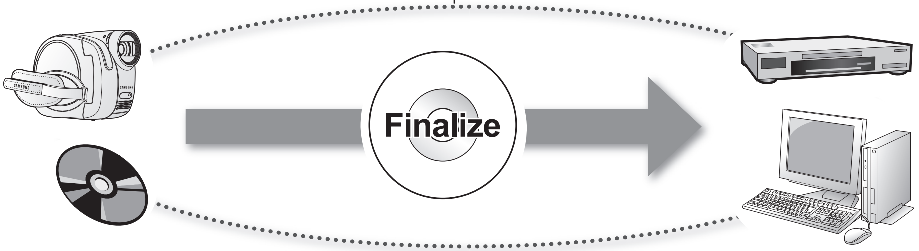
- 錄製影片影像 ➥ 第 33~37、56 頁
- 拍攝相片影像（僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105）➥ 第 57 頁

## 步驟 3：播放 / 編輯

- 從縮略索引視圖中選擇要播放的影像 ➥ 第 38、58~59 頁
- 在電腦（僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105）或電視上檢視 DVD 攝錄放影機的播放情況 ➥ 第 86~89、96 頁
- 根據您的喜好編輯影片影像（僅能在 DVD-RW（VR 模式）下使用編輯功能）➥ 第 40~46 頁

## 步驟 4：檢視 DVD 裝置

您必須提前終結光碟以檢視透過 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製到 DVD 裝置上的影片影像。（終結功能可允許透過 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製的光碟能夠在 DVD 裝置上播放，如 DVD 播放機。）

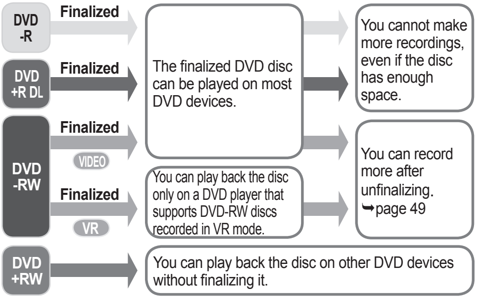


➥continued

➥ 續

# introduction to basic features

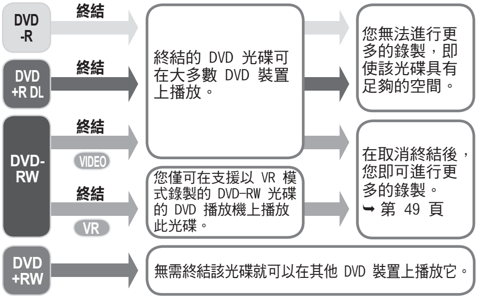
**The function of the finalized disc depends on the disc type.**


DVD -R
Finalized
DVD +R DL
Finalized
DVD -RW
Finalized
VIDEO
Finalized
VR
DVD +RW
The finalized DVD disc can be played on most DVD devices.
You can play back the disc only on a DVD player that supports DVD-RW discs recorded in VR mode.
You cannot make more recordings, even if the disc has enough space.
You can record more after unfinalizing. ➥page 49
You can play back the disc on other DVD devices without finalizing it.

- You cannot use the following discs.
  - 5 inch (12cm) CD/DVD discs
  - CD/CD-R/CD-RW/DVD-ROM/DVD+R (Single Layer)/DVD-RAM/DVD-R (Dual Layer), Floppy Disk, MO, MD, ID, LD
- We are not responsible for data loss on a disc.
- We do not warranty any damage or loss incurred due to recording and playback failure caused by disc or card malfunction.
- We take no responsibility and offer no compensation for any recording failure, loss of recorded or edited material and/or damage to the recorder arising from the misuse of discs.
- For stable and perpetual recording and playback, use **TDK, MKM, Verbatim** discs that have the “for VIDEO CAMERA™”designation. If you do not use them, recording and playback operation may not work properly or you may not be able to eject the disc from the camcorder.
- The time it takes to finalize a disc may vary depending on the recording time.
- You cannot overwrite, edit, or format a finalized disc. If needed, unfinalize the disc. (DVD-RW only) ➥page 49
- It is not guaranteed that all DVD players/recorders/drives can play discs finalized in this DVD camcorder.
  For compatibility details, refer to the DVD players/recorders/drives owner’s manual.
- For more information about available discs, see page 101.

# 基本功能簡介

**終結光碟的功能取決於光碟類型。**


DVD -R
終結
DVD +R DL
終結
DVD-RW
終結
VIDEO
終結
VR
DVD +RW
終結的 DVD 光碟可在大多數 DVD 裝置上播放。
您僅可在支援以 VR 模式錄製的 DVD-RW 光碟的 DVD 播放機上播放此光碟。
您無法進行更多的錄製，即使該光碟具有足夠的空間。
在取消終結後，您即可進行更多的錄製。➥ 第 49 頁
無需終結該光碟就可以在其他 DVD 裝置上播放它。

- 不能使用以下光碟。
  - 5 英吋（12 公分）CD/DVD 光碟
  - CD/CD-R/CD-RW/DVD-ROM/DVD+R（單層）/DVD-RAM/DVD-R（雙層）、軟碟、MO、MD、ID、LD
- 對於光碟上的資料丟失，我們不負任何責任。
- 對於由於光碟或卡故障導致的錄製或播放故障發生的任何損壞或丟失，我們不提供任何擔保。
- 對於光碟使用不當造成的錄製故障、已錄製或已編輯材料的丟失和/或對錄製機宴品的損害，我們不負任何責任，也不提供賠償。
- 要使錄製和播放效能穩定持久，請使用 **TDK、MKM、Verbatim** 光碟（帶有「for VIDEO CAMERA™」標誌。如果不使用這些光碟，錄製和播放操作可能無法正常進行，或者不能從攝錄放影機中彈出光碟。
- 終結時間可能因光碟的錄製時間而異。
- 不能改寫、編輯或格式化已終結的光碟。若有需要，請取消終結光碟。（僅適用於 DVD-RW）➥ 第 49 頁
- 不保證所有 DVD 播放機 / 錄製機 / 磁碟機都能播放在此 DVD 攝錄放影機中終結的光碟。
  有關相容性詳細資料，請參閱 DVD 播放機 / 錄製機 / 磁碟機使用者手冊。
- 如需有關可用光碟的更多資訊，請參閱第 101 頁。

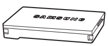
# getting to know your DVD camcorder

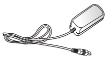
## WHAT IS INCLUDED WITH YOUR DVD CAMCORDER

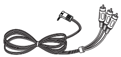
Your new DVD camcorder comes with the following accessories. If any of these items is missing from your box, call Samsung's Customer Care Center.

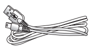
**✪ The exact appearance of each item may vary by model.**

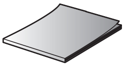
1. Battery pack
2. AC power adaptor(AA-E9 type)
3. AV cable
4. USB cable(SC-DX103/ DX105 only)
5. User manual
6. Button-type battery for internal clock(TYPE: CR2025) or remote control(SC-DX105 only)
7. Remote control(SC-DX105 only)
8. Software CD(DV Media PRO) (SC-DX103/DX105 only)
9. Carrying case (Option)
10. 3 1/2 inch(8cm) DVD-RW disc(Option)

1


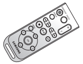
2


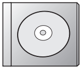
3


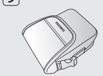
4


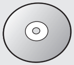
5


6

7


8


9


10


- The contents may vary depending on the sales region.
- Parts and accessories are available at your local Samsung dealer.
- A memory card is not included. See pages 52~53 for memory cards compatible with your DVD camcorder. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)
- To buy this optional accessory, contact your nearest Samsung dealer.

---

# 了解您的 DVD 攝錄放影機

## 您的 DVD 攝錄放影機的隨附物件

您的新 DVD 攝錄放影機隨附了以下配件。如果包裝盒中遺失了任何這些項目，請聯絡 Samsung 客戶服務中心。

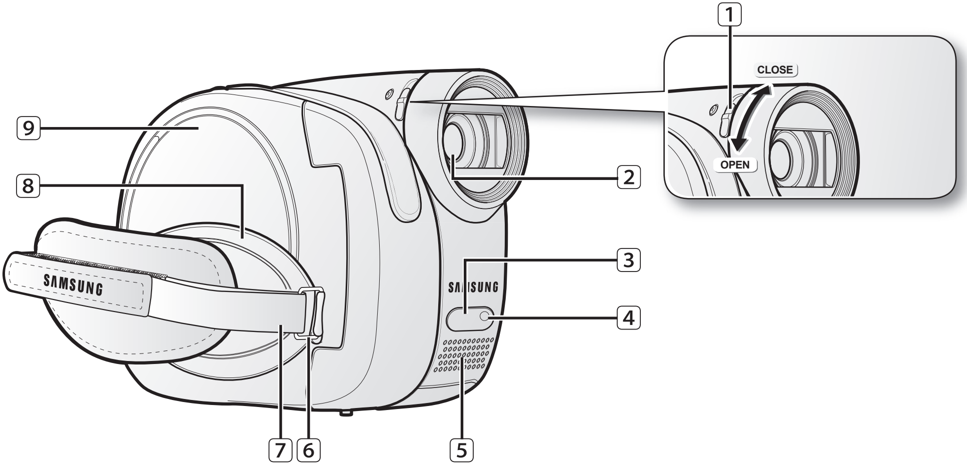
**✪ 每個項目的實際外形都可能因機型而異。**

1. 電池組
2. 交流電源適配器（AA-E9 型）
3. AV 纜線
4. USB 纜線（僅適用於 SC-DX103/SC-DX105）
5. 使用者手冊
6. 內部時鐘的鈕扣電池（型號：CR2025）或遙控器 I（僅適用於 SC-DX105）
7. 遙控器（僅適用於 SC-DX105）
8. 軟體 CD(DV Media PRO)（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）
9. 攜帶包（選購）
10. 3 1/2 英吋(8 公分)DVD-RW 光碟(選購)

- 內容視銷售地區的不同而有所不同。
- 部件與配件可從您當地的 Samsung 代理商選購。
- 不隨附記憶卡。請參閱第 52~53 頁以了解記憶卡與 DVD 攝錄放影機相容的資訊。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）
- 要購買可選購的配件，請與您就近的 Samsung 經銷商聯絡。

# getting to know your DVD camcorder

## FRONT AND RIGHT VIEW


1
CLOSE
OPEN
9
8
2
3
SAMSUNG
SAMSUNG
4
7
6
5

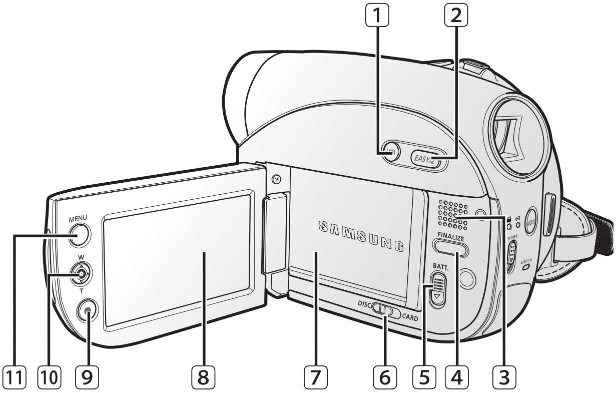
1 Lens open/close switch
2 Lens
3 Remote sensor
4 Light (SC-DX105 only)
5 Internal microphone
6 Grip belt hook
7 Grip belt
8 Swivel handle
9 Disc cover

# 了解您的 DVD 攝錄放影機

## 正視圖和右視圖

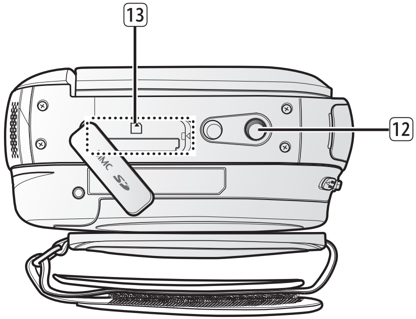
1 鏡頭開啟 / 關閉開關
2 鏡頭
3 遙控感應窗
4 燈（僅適用於 SC-DX105）
5 內置麥克風
6 手握帶扣
7 手握帶
8 旋轉手柄
9 光碟蓋

## LEFT AND BOTTOM VIEW


1
2
MENU
W
T
EASY Q
SAMSUNG
FINALIZE
BATT.
DISC
CARD
POWER
MODE
ACCESSORY
11
10
9
8
7
6
5
4
3

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Display (\|▢\|) button |
| 2 | EASY Q button |
| 3 | Built-in speaker |
| 4 | FINALIZE button |
| 5 | BATT. (battery release) switch |
| 6 | Storage mode switch (DISC/CARD) (SC-DX103/DX105 only) |
| 7 | Battery pack |
| 8 | LCD screen |
| 9 | Recording start/stop button |
| 10 | Joystick (up/down/right/left/Select, W/T) |
| 11 | MENU button |
| 12 | Tripod receptacle |
| 13 | Memory card slot (SC-DX103/DX105 only) |

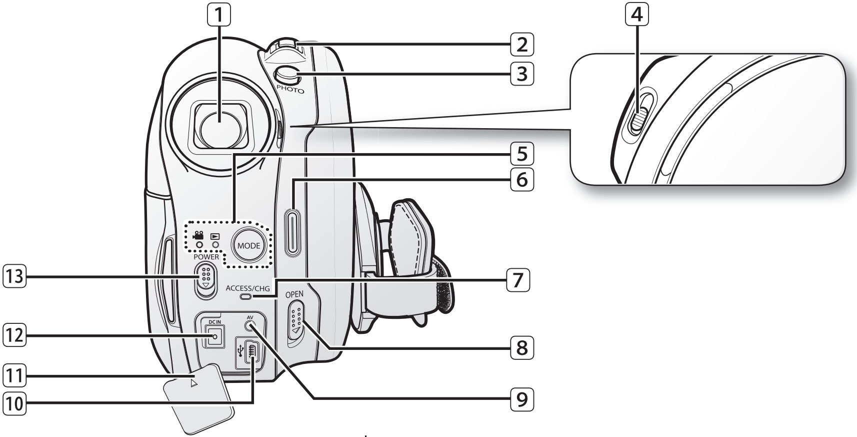
## 左視圖和底部視圖



| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | 顯示器（\|▢\|）按鈕 |
| 2 | EASY Q 按鈕 |
| 3 | 內置喇叭 |
| 4 | FINALIZE 按鈕 |
| 5 | BATT.（電池釋放門）開關 |
| 6 | 儲存模式開關 (DISC/CARD)（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105） |
| 7 | 電池組 |
| 8 | LCD 螢幕 |
| 9 | 錄製開啟 / 停止按鈕 |
| 10 | 搖桿（上 / 下 / 右 / 左 / 選擇，W/T） |
| 11 | MENU 按鈕 |
| 12 | 三腳架 |
| 13 | 記憶卡插槽（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105） |

# getting to know your DVD camcorder

## REAR AND TOP VIEW



1 Viewfinder
2 Zoom (W/T) lever/ Volume control
3 PHOTO button (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)
4 Focus adjustment knob
5 MODE button / Mode indicator (Record (🎥)/Play (▶) mode)
6 Recording start/stop button
7 ACCESS/CHG indicator
8 OPEN switch
9 AV jack
10 USB jack (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)
11 DC IN/ USB / AV jack cover
12 DC IN jack
13 POWER switch

# 了解您的 DVD 攝錄放影機

## 後視圖和頂部視圖

1 取景器
2 縮放 (W/T) 桿 / 音量控制
3 PHOTO 按鈕 ( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105 )
4 焦距調整旋鈕
5 MODE 按鈕 / 模式指示器 ( 錄製 ( 🎥 )/ 播放 ( ▶ ) 模式 )
6 錄製開始 / 停止按鈕
7 ACCESS/CHG 指示器
8 OPEN 開關
9 AV 插孔
10 USB 插孔 ( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105 )
11 DC IN/ USB / AV 插孔蓋
12 DC IN 插孔
13 POWER 開關

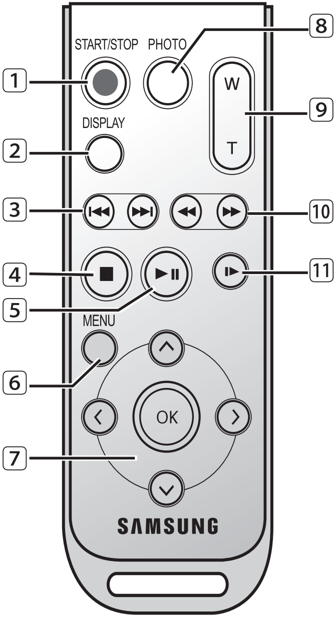
# preparation

This section provides information on using this DVD camcorder; such as how to use the provided accessories, how to charge the battery, how to setup the operation mode and initial setup.

## REMOTE CONTROL (SC-DX105 only)

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | START/STOP button |
| 2 | DISPLAY button |
| 3 | Skip (⏮/⏭) button |
| 4 | Stop (■) button |
| 5 | Play/Pause (⏯) button |
| 6 | MENU button |
| 7 | Control (⌃/⌄/‹/›/OK)buttons |
| 8 | PHOTO button |
| 9 | Zoom (W/T) button |
| 10 | Search (⏪/⏩) button |
| 11 | Slow playback (I▶) button |

The buttons on the remote control function the same as those on DVD camcorder.



# 準備工作

本節提供關於使用此 DVD 攝錄放影機的資訊，例如：如何使用提供的配件、如何充電及如何設定操作模式和起始設定。

## 遙控器（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | START/STOP 按鈕 |
| 2 | DISPLAY 按鈕 |
| 3 | 略過（⏮/⏭）按鈕 |
| 4 | 停止（■）按鈕 |
| 5 | 播放 / 暫停（⏯）按鈕 |
| 6 | MENU 按鈕 |
| 7 | 控制（⌃/⌄/‹/›/OK）按鈕 |
| 8 | PHOTO 按鈕 |
| 9 | 縮放（W/T）按鈕 |
| 10 | 搜尋（⏪/⏩）按鈕 |
| 11 | 慢動作播放（I▶）按鈕 |

遙控器上的按鈕與 DVD 攝錄放影機上的按鈕功能相同。

## INSTALLING THE BUTTON-TYPE BATTERY

### Installation for the internal clock (battery release) switch

1. Open the LCD screen, then slide the **BATT**. (battery release) switch in the arrow direction to remove the battery pack.
2. Remove the battery cover.
3. Replace the button-type battery then place the battery cover back.
   - Position the button type battery with the positive (+) terminal face out in the button type battery slot.

### Battery installation for the internal clock

The button type battery maintains the clock function and preset contents of the memory: even if the battery pack or AC power adapter is removed.
The button type battery for the DVD camcorder lasts about 6 months under normal operation from the time of installation.
When the button type battery becomes weak or dead, the date/time indicator will display "**JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM**" when you turn the date and time display on.

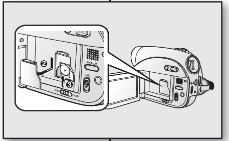
### Installing the button-type battery in the remote control (SC-DX105 only)

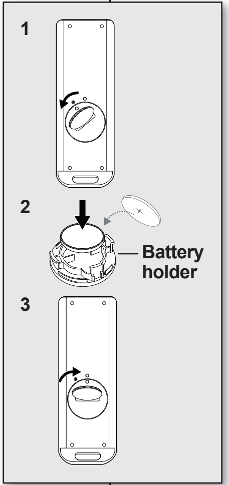
1. Turn the battery holder counterclockwise (as indicated with (⦿) mark) using your fingernail or a coin to open it. The battery holder opens.
2. Insert the battery into the battery holder with the positive (+) terminal facing down and press it firmly until you hear a locking sound.
3. Place the battery holder back in the remote control, matching its (○) mark with the (⦿) mark on the remote control, and turn the battery holder clockwise to lock it.

### Precautions regarding the button type battery

- There is a danger of explosion if button type battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Do not pick up the battery using tweezers or other metal tools. This will cause a short circuit.
- Do not recharge, disassemble, heat or immerse the battery in water to avoid the risk of explosion.

WARNING **Keep the button type battery out of the reach of the children. Should any battery be swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.**





## 安裝鈕扣電池

### 安裝內部時鐘（電池釋放閂）開關

1. 打開 LCD 螢幕，然後沿箭頭方向滑動 **BATT.**（電池釋放閂）開關以取出電池組。
2. 取下電池蓋。
3. 更換鈕扣電池，然後再蓋好電池蓋。
   - 將鈕扣電池放入鈕扣電池插槽中，正（+）極端向外。

### 安裝內部時鐘的電池

鈕扣電池可以保持時鐘功能及預設的記憶體內容：即使拔下了電池組或交流電源適配器。
在正常操作下，DVD 攝錄放影機的鈕扣電池從裝入起可以使用大約 6 個月。
在您開啟日期和時間顯示時，如果鈕扣電池電量不足或耗盡，則日期 / 時間指示器將會顯示「**JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM**」。

### 向遙控器中裝入鈕扣電池（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

1. 使用手指甲或硬幣以逆時針方向旋轉電池座（按照指定的（⦿）標記）將其開啟。電池座開啟。
2. 將電池正（+）極端向下插入電池座中，並用力按下它直到聽到鎖定聲為止。
3. 將電池座置於遙控器後部，與遙控器上的（○）標記（⦿）吻合，然後按順時針方向旋轉電池座將其鎖定。

### 有關紐扣電池的注意事項

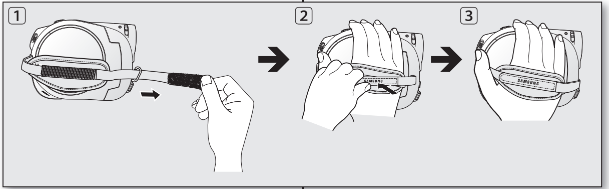
- 如果沒有正確更換鈕扣電池，將會有爆炸的危險。請使用相同類型的電池來更換。
- 切勿使用鑷子或其他金屬工具取出電池。這樣可能會引起短路。
- 切勿充電、拆解、加熱或將電池浸泡在水中，以防爆炸危險。

警告 **請勿讓兒童接觸到鈕扣電池。如果吞下電池，請即刻尋求醫療救助。**

## HOLDING THE DVD CAMCORDER

### Attaching a grip belt

Insert your right hand from the bottom of the DVD camcorder up to the base of your thumb.
Put your hand in a position where you can easily operate the **Recording start/stop** button, **PHOTO** button, and the **Zoom** lever.
Adjust the length of grip belt so that the DVD camcorder is stable when you press the **Recording start/stop** button with your thumb.

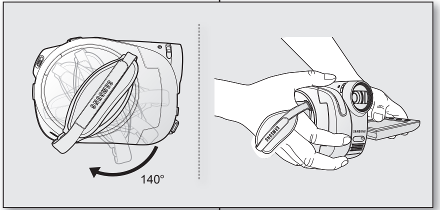


1. Pull and detach the grip belt.
   Insert the grip belt into its hook as shown in the figure.
2. Insert your hand into the grip belt and adjust its length.
3. Close the grip belt.

### Angle Adjustment

Rotate the swivel handle at the most convenient angle.
You can rotate it downwards upto 140°.

Please be careful not to turn the swivel handle backward as it may cause damage.



## 握往 DVD 攝錄放影機

### 安裝手握帶

從 DVD 攝錄放影機底部向拇指底部插入右手。
將手放在能輕鬆操作**錄製開始 / 停止按鈕**、**PHOTO** 按鈕和**縮放**桿的位置。
用拇指按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕時，調整手握帶長度以固定 DVD 攝錄放影機。

1. 拉出握帶然後拆下來。
   將手握帶插到握帶扣中，如圖所示。
2. 將您的手穿過手握帶然後調整長度。
3. 上手握帶。

### 角度調整

以最方便的角度旋轉此旋轉手柄。
您最多可以將其向下旋轉 140°。

請一定注意不可將旋轉手柄向後轉動，否則可能使其損壞。

# preparation

## CHARGING THE BATTERY PACK

- There are two types of power source that can be connected to your DVD camcorder.
- Do not use provided power supply units with other equipment.
  - The battery pack: used for outdoor recording.
  - The AC power adaptor: used for indoor recording.

### To charge the battery pack

Be sure to charge the battery pack before you start using your DVD camcorder.

**Attaching the battery pack to the DVD camcorder**

1. Open up the LCD screen 90 degrees with your finger.
2. Fit the battery pack to the battery attachment platform and push the battery pack as shown in the figure until a click is heard.

**Removing the battery pack from the DVD camcorder**

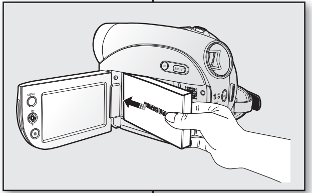
1. Open up the LCD screen 90 degrees with your finger.
2. Slide the **BATT.** (battery release) switch in the direction as shown in the figure and pull out the battery pack.

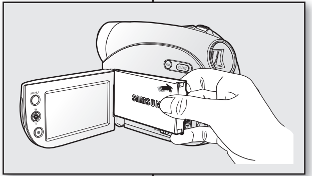
**WARNING**

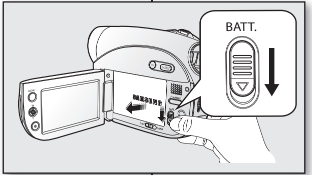
Insert the battery pack in the accurate direction as shown in the figure.
When the battery pack is wrongly inserted, it may cause malfunction of the DVD camcorder and battery pack.

- It is recommended that you purchase one or more additional battery packs to allow continuous use of your DVD camcorder.
- Additional battery packs are available at your local Samsung dealer.
- If the DVD camcorder will not be in use for a while, remove the battery from the DVD camcorder.

Use only Samsung-approved battery packs. Do not use batteries from other manufacturers.
Otherwise, there is a danger of overheating, fire or explosion.
Samsung is not responsible for problems occurring due to using unapproved batteries.







# 準備工作

## 給電池組充電

- 有兩各電源類型可以連接到 DVD 攝錄放影機。
- 切勿同其他設備一起使用所提供的電源裝置。
  - 電池組：用於戶外拍攝。
  - 交流電源適配器：用於室內拍攝。

### 給電池組充電

在使用 DVD 攝錄放影機之前一定要為電池組充電。

**在 DVD 攝錄放影機中裝上電池組**

1. 用手指開啟 LCD 螢幕呈 90 度。
2. 將電池組固定到電池配件平台上，然後按照如圖所示方式推動電池組，直到聽到「卡嗒」聲。

**從 DVD 攝錄放影機中取出電池組**

1. 用手指開啟 LCD 螢幕呈 90 度。
2. 滑動 **BATT**.（電池釋放閂）開關，按照如圖所示的方向，然後取出電池組。

**警告**

按照如圖所示的方向插入電池組。
如果電池包插入錯誤，可能會造成 DVD 攝錄放影機和電池包功能異常。

- 建議您購買一個或多個額外的電池組，這樣可連續使用您的 DVD 攝錄放影機。
- 額外的電池組可從您當地的 Samsung 代理商選購。
- 若長時間不會使用 DVD 攝錄放影機，請從 DVD 攝錄放影機中取出電池。

請僅使用 Samsung 認可的電池組。切勿使用其他廠家的電池。
否則，將會導致過熱、火災或爆炸的危險。
由於使用未經批準的電池而導致的問題，Samsung 概不負責。

**About battery packs**

- The battery pack should be recharged in an environment that is between 0°C (32°F) and 40°C (104°F).
  However, when it is exposed to cold temperatures (below 0°C (32°F)), its usage time becomes reduced and it may cease to function. If this happens, place the battery pack in your pocket or other warm, protected place for a short time, then re-insert it to the DVD camcorder.
- Do not put the battery pack near any heat source (i.e. fire or a heater).
- Do not disassemble, apply pressure to, or heat the battery pack.
- Do not allow battery pack terminals to be short-circuited. It may cause leakage, heat generation, induce overheating or fire.

**Maintaining the battery pack**

- The recording time is affected by temperature and environmental conditions.
- The recording time shortens dramatically in a cold environment. The continuous recording times in the user manual are measured using a fully charged battery pack at 25°C (77°F). As the environmental temperature and conditions vary, the remaining battery time may differ from the approximate continuous recording times given in the instructions.
- We recommend only using the original battery pack that is available from your Samsung retailer. When the battery reaches the end of its life, please contact your local dealer. The batteries have to be treated as chemical waste.
- Make sure that the battery pack is fully charged before starting to record.
- When fully discharged, a battery pack damages the internal cells. The battery pack may be prone to leakage when fully discharged.
- Remove the battery from the camcorder when it is not in use. Even when the power is switched off, the battery pack will still discharge if it is left attached to the DVD camcorder.
- For power saving purpose, the DVD camcorder enters the sleep mode automatically if no operation is for 3 minutes in the **STBY** mode and thumbnail index view. If no operation goes on 3 minutes more, it turns off automatically. If any operation occurs in the sleep mode, the DVD camcorder comes out of the sleep mode. This function works only if **"Auto Power Off"** is set to **"6 Min."** ➥page 80
- Make sure that the battery pack fits firmly into place. Do not drop the battery pack as it may cause damage.

**About the battery life**

Battery capacity decreases over time and through repeated use.
If decreased usage time between charges becomes significant, it is probably time to replace it with a new one.
Each battery's life is affected by storage, operating and environmental conditions.

**關於電池組**

- 電池組必須在介於 0°C (32°F) 和 40°C (104°F) 的環境溫度下重新充電。
  但是，若將其暴露於低溫 ( 低於 0°C (32°F) ) 中，則其使用時間將會縮短，並且可能無法使用。如果發生此類情況，請將電池組放入您的口袋或其他溫暖而安全的地方片刻，然後將其重新裝入 DVD 攝錄放影機中。
- 切勿將電池組放在靠近熱源的地方 ( 如火或暖器 )。
- 勿拆開、擠壓或加熱電池組。
- 切勿讓電池組各端形成短路。這可能會導致電池組漏液、發出熱量，引起過熱或火災。

**維護電池組**

- 錄製時間會受溫度和環境條件的影響。
- 在寒冷的環境溫度下，錄製時間會急速縮短。使用者手冊中提供的連續錄製時間是根據在 25°C (77°F) 溫度下使用完全充電的電池組所測得的結果。由於環境溫度和條件會經常改變，因此剩餘的電池時間可能會與說明中提供的大約連續錄製時間有所不同。
- 我們建議您僅使用從 Samsung 零售商購買的原始電池組。在電池到達其使用壽命時，請與當地經銷商聯繫。必須以處理化學廢物的方式處理該電池。
- 開始錄製之前，請確定電池組已經完全充電。
- 電池組完全放電時，可能會損壞內部元件。完全放電的電池組可能會導致漏液。
- 在不使用時，要從攝錄放影機中取出電池。若將電池組留在 DVD 攝錄放影機內，即使關閉電源，電池組將仍然會放電。
- 為節省電源，DVD 攝錄放影機會在 **STBY** 模式和縮略索引視圖 3 分鐘後自動進入睡眠模式。若超過 3 分鐘沒有執行任何操作，則會自動關閉。如果在睡眠模式下進行操作，則 DVD 攝錄放影機會退出睡眠模式。此功能僅在「**Auto Power Off**」設定為「**6 Min.**」。➥ 第 80 頁
- 確保電池組已穩固安裝到位。切勿讓電池組掉落，否則可能使其損壞。

**關於電池壽命**

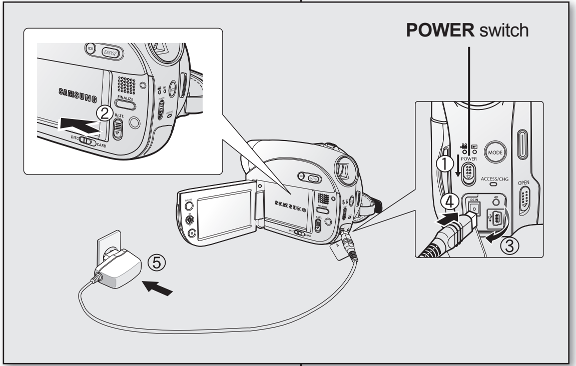
電池容量會因超時和重複使用而減小。
如果充電後的使用時間大大減少，則可能要更換新電池組。
每節電池的壽命受存放、操作和環境條件的影響。

# preparation

## Charging the battery pack

- Use IA-BP80W battery pack only.
- The battery pack may be charged a little at the time of purchase.

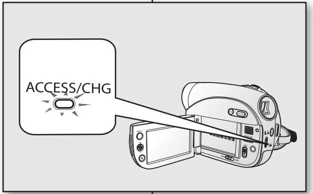
1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn off the power.
2. Open the LCD screen and attach the battery pack to the DVD camcorder. ➥page 16
3. Open the DC IN/USB/AV jack cover.
4. Connect the AC power adaptor to the DC IN jack of your DVD camcorder.
5. Connect the AC power adaptor to a wall socket.
   - The **ACCESS/CHG** (charging) indicator lights up in orange and charging starts. The **ACCESS/CHG** (charging) indicator lights up in green when the battery is fully charged.
6. Once charged, disconnect the AC power adaptor from the DC IN jack on your DVD camcorder.
   - Even with the power switched off, the battery pack will still discharge if it is left attached to the DVD camcorder. It is recommended that you remove the battery pack from the DVD camcorder.



## Charging indicator

The color of the **ACCESS/CHG** (charging) indicator indicates the power or charging state.

- If the battery has been fully charged, the charging indicator is green.
- If you are charging the battery, the color of the charging indicator is orange.
- If an error occurs while the battery pack in charging, the charging indicator blinks orange.



# 準備工作

## 電池組充電

- 僅使用IA-BP80W電池組。
- 電池組在購買時可能已經有少量電量。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以關閉電源。
2. 打開LCD螢幕，然後在DVD攝錄放影機中裝入電池組。➥第16頁
3. 打開DC IN/USB/AV插孔蓋。
4. 將交流電源適配器連接到DVD攝錄放影機的DC IN插孔。
5. 將交流電源適配器連接到牆上插座。
   - **ACCESS/CHG**（充電）指示燈呈橙色亮起，即開始充電。當電池充滿時，**ACCESS/CHG**（充電）指示燈會呈綠色亮起。
6. 在充電完成後，從DVD攝錄放影機上的DC IN插孔斷開交流電源適配器。
   - 如果將電池組留在DVD攝錄放影機內，即使關閉電源，電池組將仍然會放電。建議您從DVD攝錄放影機中取出電池組。

## 充電指示器

**ACCESS/CHG**（充電）指示器的顏色指示電量或充電狀態。

- 如果電池完全充滿，充電指示器會呈綠色。
- 如果您正在給電池充電，則充電指示燈的顏色會呈橙色。
- 如果在電池組充電時發生故障，則充電指示燈呈橙色閃爍。

## Charging, recording and playback times with a fully charged battery pack (with no zoom operation, etc.)

For your reference, the approximate time with fully charged battery pack:

| | Battery Pack | |
|---|---|---|
| **Charging time** | **1 hr 50 min** | |
| | Continuous recording time | Playback time |
| LCD | 60min | 65min |
| Viewfinder | | |

- The time above is based on Fine mode.
  It may differ depending on Super Fine or Normal mode.
- The time is only for reference. Figures shown above are measured under Samsung's test environment, and may differ from your actual use.
- The charging time will vary depending on the remaining battery level.

**Continuous recording time (without zoom)**

The times shown in the table reflect the available recording time when the DVD camcorder is in the recording mode without using any other functions. In actual recording, the battery pack may discharge 2-3 times faster than this reference since the record start/stop and zoom are being operated, and playback is performed. Assume that the recordable time with a fully charged battery pack is between 1/2 and 1/3 of the time in the table, so prepare enough battery packs to allow for the time you are planning to record on the DVD camcorder.
Note that the battery pack discharges faster in a cold environment.

## 完全充電電池組的充電、錄製和播放時間（無縮放操作等）

僅供參考，完全充電電池組的大約時間：

| | 電池組 | |
|---|---|---|
| **充電時間** | **1 小時 50 分鐘** | |
| | 連續錄製時間 | 播放時間 |
| LCD | 60 分鐘 | 65 分鐘 |
| 取景器 | | |

- 上面的時間基於「清晰」模式。
  可能會因「高清晰」或「標準」模式而異。
- 時間僅供參考。上表顯示的數字為在 Samsung 測試環境下測量，並可能會因實際使用情況而異。
- 充電時間將因剩餘電池電量而不同。

**連續錄製時間（無縮放）**

表格中的時間反映出在 DVD 攝錄放影機處於錄製模式而不使用任何其他功能時，可錄製的時間。由於使用錄製開始 / 停止和縮放功能和進行播放，因此在實際錄製時，電池組的放電速度可能是以上參考時間的 2-3 倍。假設完全充電電池組的可錄製時間為表內時間的 1/2 至 1/3 之間，則應具有足夠的電池組來滿足您計劃在 DVD 攝錄放影機上錄製的時間。
請註意，電池組在寒冷環境中的放電速度更快。

# preparation

## Using the DVD camcorder with the AC power adaptor

It is recommended that you use the AC power adaptor to power the DVD camcorder from a household AC outlet when you perform settings on it, finalize a disc, play back, or edit images, or use it indoors. ➥page 18

- Be sure to use the provided AC power adaptor to power the DVD camcorder. Using other AC power adaptors could cause electric shock or result in fire.
- The AC power adaptor can be used around the world. An AC plug adaptor is required in some foreign countries. If you need one, purchase it at your local Samsung dealer.

**CAUTION**

- Before detaching the power source, make sure that the DVD camcorder's power is turned off.
  Failure to do so can result in DVD camcorder malfunction.
- Use a nearby wall outlet when using the AC power adaptor. Disconnect the AC power adaptor from the wall outlet immediately if any malfunction occurs while using your DVD camcorder.
- Do not use the AC power adaptor in a narrow space, such as between a wall and furniture.

# 準備工作

## 使用帶交流電源適配器的 DVD 攝錄放影機

當您在 DVD 攝錄放影機上進行設定、終結光碟、播放、或編輯影像或在室內使用時，建議您使用交流電源適配器從室內交流電插座為其供電。➥ 第 18 頁

- 一定要使用指定隨附的交流電源適配器為 DVD 攝錄放影機供電。使用其他交流電源適配器可能會造成觸電或火災。
- 交流電源適配器可以在世界各地使用。在某些外國國家 / 地區，需要交流插頭轉接器。如果需要交流插頭轉接器，請在您當地的 Samsung 經銷商處購買。

**注意**

- 在拔下電源之前，確保關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機的電源。否則會導致 DVD 攝錄放影機發生故障。
- 在使用交流電源適配器時，可使用鄰近的牆上插座。如果在使用攝錄放影機時發生任何故障，請立即從牆上插座拔下交流電源適配器。
- 請勿使用放在狹窄空間（如牆和家俱之間）的交流電源適配器。

## Turning the DVD camcorder on and off

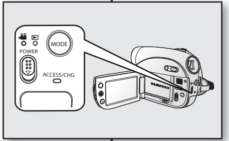
You can turn the camcorder on or off by sliding the **POWER** switch down.

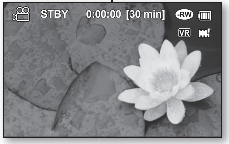
## Selecting the operating modes

- Set the operation mode by adjusting the **Storage mode** switch (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) and **MODE** button before recording or operating any functions.

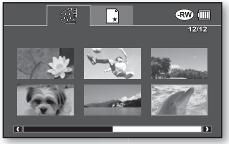
1. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC** or **CARD**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only)
   - DVD camcorder mode: To record movie on a DVD disc. ➥page 33
   - Digital camera mode: To record movie or photo images on memory card. ➥pages 56~57
2. Press the **MODE** button to set Record(🎥) or Play(🎞) mode. Each press of the **MODE** button toggles between the Record(🎥) mode and Play(🎞) mode.

When the DVD camcorder is turned on, the self-diagnosis function operates and a message may appear. In this case, refer to warning indicators and messages (on pages 103~105) and take corrective action.





<DVD camcorder record mode>



<DVD camcorder play mode>

## 開啟和關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機

您可以透過向下滑動 **POWER** 開關來開啟或關閉攝錄放影機。

## 選取操作模式

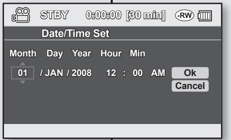
- 在錄製和操作任何功能之前，透過調整**儲存模式**開關（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）和 **MODE** 按鈕設定操作模式。

1. 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC** 或 **CARD**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）
   - DVD 攝錄放影機模式：在 DVD 光碟上錄製影片。➥ 第 33 頁
   - 數位相機模式：在記憶卡上錄製影片或相片影像。➥ 第 56~57 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定錄製（🎥）或播放（🎞）模式。每次按下 **MODE** 按鈕，便會在錄製（🎥）模式和播放（🎞）模式之間切換。

開啟 DVD 攝錄放影機後，自診斷功能就會運行，並可能會顯示訊息。在此情況下，請參考警告指示器和訊息（在第 103~105 頁上），然後採取更正措施。

### When using this camcorder first time

- When you use your DVD camcorder for the first time or you reset it, you will see the “**Date/Time Set**” screen for the startup display. If you do not set the date and time, the “**Date/Time Set**” screen appears every time you turn on your camcorder.



STBY 0:00:00 [30 min] -RW

Date/Time Set

Month Day Year Hour Min

01 / JAN / 2008 12 : 00 AM

### 第一次使用本攝錄放影機時

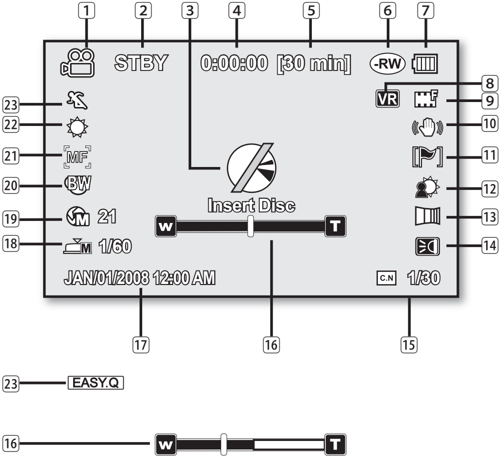
- 當您首次使用 DVD 攝錄放影機或將其重新設定時，您將會看見「**Date/Time Set**」啟動顯示的螢幕。如果不設定日期和時間，則每次打開攝錄放影機都會顯示「**Date/Time Set**」畫面。

# preparation

## SCREEN INDICATORS

### DVD camcorder record mode

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Movie record mode |
| 2 | Operating mode (STBY (standby) or ● (recording)) |
| 3 | Warning indicators and messages |
| 4 | Time counter (movie recording time) |
| 5 | Remaining time |
| 6 | Storage media (disc) |
| 7 | Battery info. (remaining battery level) |
| 8 | Disc format type (DVD-RW disc only) |
| 9 | Quality |
| 10 | Anti-Shake (DIS) |
| 11 | Wind Cut |
| 12 | Back Light |
| 13 | Fader* |
| 14 | Light* (SC-DX105 only) |
| 15 | C. Nite* |
| 16 | Zoom/Digital Zoom position* |
| 17 | Date/Time |
| 18 | Manual Shutter* |
| 19 | Manual Exposure* |
| 20 | Digital Effect |
| 21 | Manual Focus* |
| 22 | White Balance |
| 23 | Scene Mode (AE)/ EASY.Q |



- This OSD indicators are based on DVD-RW disc.
- The above screen is an example for explanation: It is different from the actual display.
- Functions marked with * will not be retained when the DVD camcorder is powered on after turning it off.
- The battery indicator appears 8 seconds after power on. If the battery is low, it appears right after power on.

# 準備工作

## 螢幕指示器

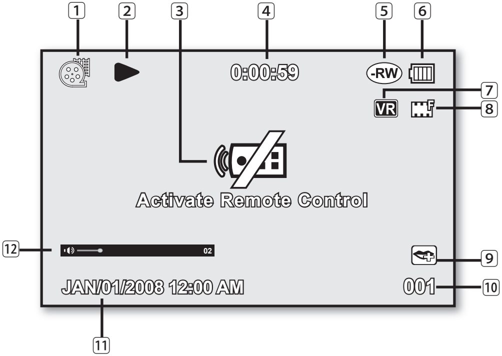
### DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | 影片錄製模式 |
| 2 | 操作模式( STBY( 待機 )或 ●( 錄製 )) |
| 3 | 警告指示器和訊息 |
| 4 | 時間計數器 ( 影片錄製時間 ) |
| 5 | 剩餘時間 |
| 6 | 儲存媒體 ( 光碟 ) |
| 7 | 電池資訊 ( 剩餘的電池電量 ) |
| 8 | 光碟格式類型<br>( 僅適用於 DVD-RW 光碟 ) |
| 9 | 品質 |
| 10 | 防震 (DIS) |
| 11 | 風聲消減 |
| 12 | 背光 |
| 13 | 調整器 * |
| 14 | 燈光 * ( 僅適用於 SC-DX105 ) |
| 15 | 彩色夜景 * |
| 16 | 縮放 / 數位縮放位置 * |
| 17 | 日期 / 時間 |
| 18 | 手動快門 * |
| 19 | 手動曝光 * |
| 20 | 數位效果 |
| 21 | 手動對焦 * |
| 22 | 白平衡 |
| 23 | 場景模式 (AE)/ 簡易拍攝 |

- 此 OSD 指示燈基於 DVD-RW 光碟。
- 以上螢幕是用作說明的範例：這與實際顯示有所差異。
- 沒有標上 * 的功能將不會在關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機後重新啟動時保留。
- 電池指示器在開啟電源後會顯示 8 秒鐘。如果電量太低，便會在開啟電源後顯示。

## DVD camcorder play mode

1 Movie play mode
2 Operating status (Play/Pause)
3 Warning indicators and messages
4 Time code (elapsed time)
5 Storage media (disc)
6 Battery info (remaining battery level)
7 Disc Format (-RW Video/VR mode only)
8 Quality
9 Voice plus
10 Movie No.
11 Date/Time
12 Volume control


1
2
3
4
5
6
0:00:59
-RW
7
VR
8
Activate Remote Control
12
02
9
JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM
001
10
11

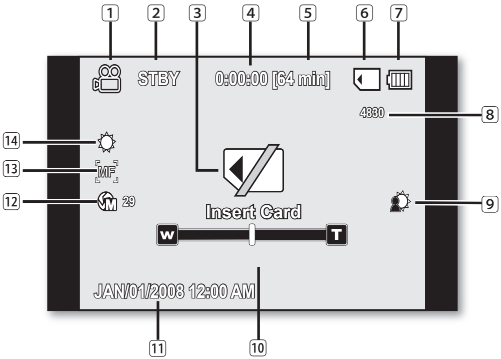
## DVD 攝錄放影機播放模式

1 影片播放模式
2 操作狀態（播放 / 暫停）
3 警告指示器和訊息
4 時間代碼（經過時間）
5 儲存媒體（光碟）
6 電池資訊（剩餘的電池電量）
7 光碟格式（僅適用於 -RW 視訊 /VR 模式）
8 品質
9 Voice plus
10 影片編號
11 日期 / 時間
12 音量控制

## Digital camera record mode

1. Record mode
2. Operating mode (STBY (standby) or ● (recording))
3. Warning indicators and messages
4. Time counter (movie recording time)
5. Remaining time
6. Storage media (memory card)
7. Battery info (remaining battery level)
8. The total number of recordable photo
9. Back Light
10. Zoom position
11. Date/Time
12. Manual Exposure*
13. Manual Focus*
14. White Balance

The digital camera mode is only for the models (SC-DX103/DX105).


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
STBY
0:00:00 [64 min]
4830
8
14
13
MF
12
29
Insert Card
9
W
T
JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM
11
10

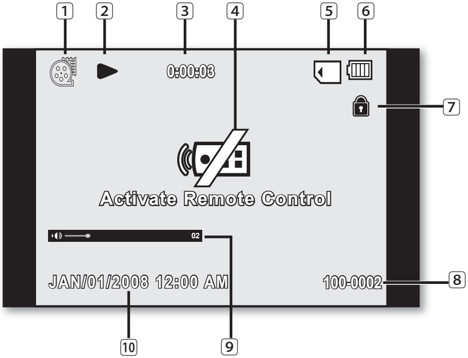
## 數位相機錄製模式

1. 錄製模式
2. 操作模式（STBY（待機）或 ●（錄製））
3. 警告指示器和訊息
4. 時間計數器（影片錄製時間）
5. 剩餘時間
6. 儲存媒體（記憶卡）
7. 電池資訊（剩餘的電池電量）
8. 可錄製相片的總數
9. 背光
10. 縮放位置
11. 日期／時間
12. 手動曝光 *
13. 手動對焦 *
14. 白平衡

數位相機模式僅適用於型號（SC-DX103/DX105).

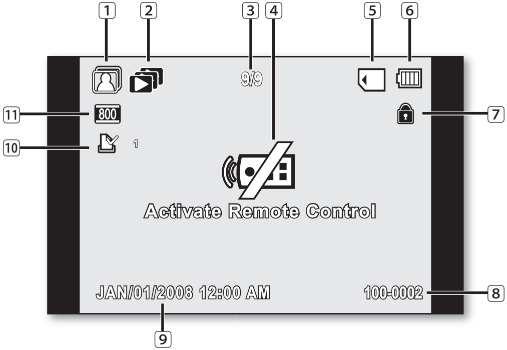
## Digital camera play mode (Video)

1. Video play mode
2. Operating status (Play/Pause)
3. Time code (elapsed time)
4. Warning indicators and messages
5. Storage media (memory card)
6. Battery info (remaining battery level)
7. Erase Protection
8. File Name (folder-file name)
9. Volume control
10. Date/Time


1
2
3
4
5
6
0:00:03
7
Activate Remote Control
02
JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM
100-0002
8
10
9

## Digital camera play mode (Photo)

1. Photo play mode
2. Slide Show
3. Image counter (current image/ total number of recorded images)
4. Warning indicators and messages
5. Storage media (memory card)
6. Battery info (remaining level)
7. Erase Protection
8. File Name (folder-file name)
9. Date/Time
10. Print Mark(DPOF)
11. Photo size


1
2
3
4
5
6
9/9
11
800
7
10
1
Activate Remote Control
JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM
100-0002
8
9

The digital camera mode is only for the models (SC-DX103/DX105).

## 數位相機播放模式（視訊）

1. 視訊播放模式
2. 操作狀態（播放／暫停）
3. 時間代碼（經過時間）
4. 警告指示器和訊息
5. 儲存媒體（記憶卡）
6. 電池資訊（剩餘的電池電量）
7. 刪除保護
8. 檔案名稱( 資料夾－檔案名稱）
9. 音量控制
10. 日期 ／ 時間

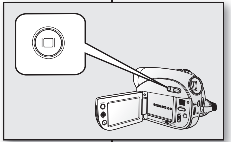
## 數位相機播放模式（相片）

1. 相片播放模式
2. 連續放映
3. 影像計數器（目前影像／錄製影像的總數）
4. 警告指示器和訊息
5. 儲存媒體（記憶卡）
6. 電池資訊（剩餘的電池電量）
7. 刪除保護
8. 檔案名稱( 資料夾－檔案名稱）
9. 日期／時間
10. 列印標記（DPOF）
11. 相片影像解析度

數位相機模式僅適用於型號（SC-DX103/DX105).

# preparation

## USING THE Display (|▢|) BUTTON



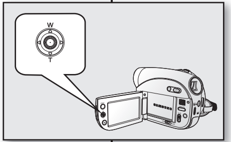
### Switching the information display mode

You can switch between the on-screen information display modes:
**Slide the POWER switch downwards to turn on the power, and then press the Display (|▢|) button.**
Each press of the button toggles the OSD (On Screen Display) function on and off.

- **Full display mode**: All information will appear.
- **Minimum display mode**: Only operating status indicator will appear.

If the DVD camcorder has warning information, a warning message will appear.

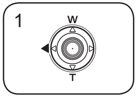
## USING THE JOYSTICK

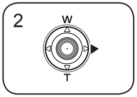


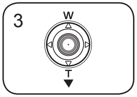
The **Joystick** is used to make a selection and to move the cursor left, right, up and down.

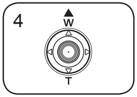
Using the **Joystick**, you can easily make your selection and navigate the menu.

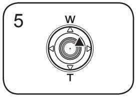
1. Move to a previous menu item / Adjust the selected item (to the left).
2. Move to a sub menu item / Adjust the selected item (to the right).
3. Move to a lower menu item.
4. Move to an upper menu item.
5. Press to select the chosen item (Select).











# 準備工作

## 使用顯示 (|▢|) 按鈕

### 切換資訊顯示模式

您可以在螢幕上資訊顯示模式之間切換：
**將 POWER 開關向下滑動開啟電源，然後按下顯示 (|▢|) 按鈕。**
每按一次該按鈕就會開啟或關閉 OSD（螢幕上顯示）功能。

- **完全顯示模式**：將顯示所有資訊。
- **最小顯示模式**：僅顯示作業狀態指示符。

如果 DVD 攝錄放影機具有警告訊息，則會顯示警告訊息。

## 使用搖桿

可使用**搖桿**選擇選項，以及將游標向左、右、上下移動。

您可以使用**搖桿**輕鬆地選擇選項和導覽選單。

1. 移至上一個選單項目 / 調整選定的項目( 往左 )。
2. 移至子選單項目 / 調整選定的項目 ( 往右 )。
3. 移至下層的選單項目。
4. 移至上層的選單項目。
5. 按下以選擇所選的項目 ( 選擇 )。

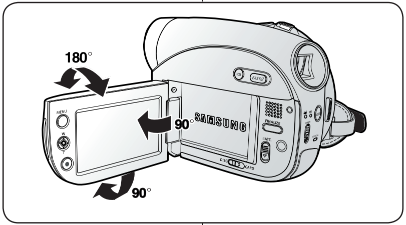
## USING THE LCD SCREEN

### Adjusting the LCD screen

1. Open up the LCD screen 90° with your finger.
2. Rotate it to the best angle to record or play.

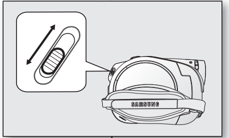
**WARNING** Do not lift the DVD camcorder by holding the LCD screen.

- Over-rotation may cause damage to the inside of the hinge that connects the LCD screen to the DVD camcorder.
- See page 79 to adjust brightness and color of the LCD screen.



## USING THE VIEWFINDER

You can view pictures through the viewfinder to see correct images when the picture on the LCD screen is poor.
The viewfinder will work when the LCD screen is closed.



### Adjusting the focus

The focus adjustment knob of the viewfinder enables individuals with vision problems to see clearer images.

1. Close the LCD screen.
2. Use the focus adjustment knob of the viewfinder to focus the picture.

Viewing the sun or any strong light source through the viewfinder for a prolonged period may be harmful, or cause temporary impairment.

## 使用 LCD 螢幕

### 調整 LCD 螢幕

1. 用手指開啟 LCD 螢幕呈 90°。
2. 將它旋轉至錄製或播放的最佳角度。

**警告** 切勿透過握住 LCD 螢幕來提起 DVD 攝錄放影機。

- 過度旋轉可能會損壞鉸鏈內部（將 LCD 螢幕連接到 DVD 攝錄放影機）。
- 要調整 LCD 螢幕的亮度和色彩，請參閱第 79 頁。

## 使用觀景窗

您可透過觀景窗檢視相片，以在 LCD 螢幕上的相片效果極差時查看正確的影像。
關閉 LCD 螢幕後，取景器就會開始工作。

### 調整焦距

觀景窗的焦距調整旋鈕可以讓有視力問題的人看到更清晰的影像。

1. 關閉 LCD 螢幕。
2. 使用觀景窗的焦距調整旋鈕來對焦影像。

長時間透過觀景窗直視太陽或任何強烈光源可能導致傷害，或造成暫時的損害。

## INITIAL SETTING: OSD LANGUAGE & DATE AND TIME

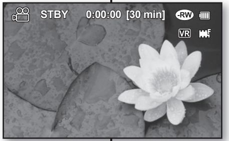
- Initial setting is available in all operating modes. ➥page 21
- To read the menus or messages in your desired language, set the OSD language.
  To store the date and time during record, set the date/time.
- Set the date and time when using this camcorder for the first time. ➥page 21
  And you can set the date and time also using the setting menu. ➥page 29

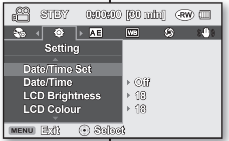
### Selecting the OSD language

You can select the desired language to display the menu screen and the messages.

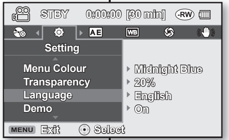
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   - The menu will appear.
2. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Setting**."
   - The setting menu will appear.
3. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Language**," then press the **Joystick**.
4. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select the desired language, then press the **Joystick**.
5. To exit, press the **MENU** button.

- Even if the battery pack or AC power were removed, the language setting would still be preserved.
- "**Language**" options may be changed without prior notice.





Date/Time Set
Date/Time ▸ Off
LCD Brightness ▸ 18
LCD Colour ▸ 18



Menu Colour ▸ Midnight Blue
Transparency ▸ 20%
Language ▸ English
Demo ▸ On

## 起始設定：OSD 語言與日期和時間

- 起始設定可用於所有操作模式。➥ 第 21 頁
- 要以所需語言讀取選單或訊息，可設定 OSD 語言。
  要在錄製時儲存日期和時間，可設定日期 / 時間。
- 在首次使用此攝錄放影機時設定日期和時間。
  ➥ 第 21 頁
  您也可以使用設定選單來設定日期和時間。
  ➥ 第 29 頁

### 選擇 OSD 語言

您可以選擇所要的語言來顯示選單畫面和訊息。

1. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
   - 將顯示選單。
2. 向左或向右移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Setting**」。
   - 將顯示設定選單。
3. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Language**」，然後按下**搖桿**。
4. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇所需語言，然後按下**搖桿**。
5. 要結束，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

- 即使取出了電池包或拔下了交流電源，仍會保留語言設定。
- 「**Language**」選項可能會變更，而不預先通知。

## Setting the date and time

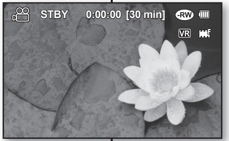
Set the date and time when using this DVD camcorder for the first time.
The recording date/time is recorded on the movie/photo (SC-DX103/DX105 only) images.

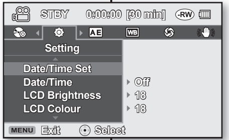
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   - The menu will appear.
2. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Setting**."
   - The setting menu will appear.
3. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Date/Time Set**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - The month will be selected.
4. Move the **Joystick** right or left to the desired item (month, day, year, hour, minute, AM/PM) and then move the **Joystick** up or down to set values.
5. To save the date and time, move the **Joystick** right or left to "**Ok**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - To cancel the setting, move the **Joystick** to select "**Cancel**," then press the **Joystick**.
6. To exit, press the **MENU** button.

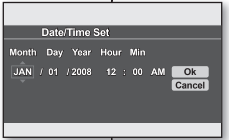
- If the button type battery is exhausted, the date and time will be reset as "**JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM.**"
  Replace with the button type battery for internal clock. ➥page 14
- You can set the year up to 2040.
- The date and time do not appear during recording, but they are automatically recorded on the storage media, and can be displayed when you turn the date and time display on.

## Turning the date and time display on/off

To switch the date and time display on or off, access the menu and change the date/time mode. ➥page 79


STBY
0:00:00 [30 min]
-RW
VR


STBY
0:00:00 [30 min]
-RW
AE
WB
Setting
Date/Time Set
Date/Time
LCD Brightness
LCD Colour
Off
18
18
MENU Exit
Select


Date/Time Set
Month Day Year Hour Min
JAN / 01 / 2008 12 : 00 AM
Ok
Cancel

## 設定日期和時間

在首次使用此 DVD 攝錄放影機時設定日期和時間。
錄製日期 / 時間會被錄製在影片 / 相片 ( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105) 影像上。

1. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
   - 將顯示選單。
2. 向左或向右移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Setting」。**
   - 將顯示設定選單。
3. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Date/Time Set」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 將會選擇月份。
4. 將**搖桿**向右或向左移動至所需項目 ( 月 ,日 ,年，小時，分鐘，上午 / 下午 )，然後向上或向下移動**搖桿**以設定數值。
5. 要儲存日期和時間，可向右或向左移動**搖桿**至**「Ok」**，然後按下**搖桿。**
   - 要取消設定 ,可移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Cancel」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
6. 要結束，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

- 如果鈕扣電池耗盡，則日期和時間將會重新設定為
  **「JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM」**。
  更換內部時鐘的鈕扣電池。➥ 第 14 頁
- 您最多可以將年份設定為 2040。
- 錄製時不會顯示日期和時間，但是日期和時間會被自動錄製到儲存媒體上，並會在開啟日期和時間顯示器時顯示。

## 開啟 / 關閉日期和時間

要開啟或關閉日期和時間顯示器，可存取選單和變更日期 / 時間模式。➥ 第 79 頁

# DVD camcorder mode: before recording

## SELECTING THE STORAGE MEDIA (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

You can record movie and photo images on the desired storage media (a DVD disc or a memory card) so you should select the desired storage media before starting recording or playback. Note that photo images cannot be recorded onto a DVD disc.

A DVD disc is available only in the movie mode.

### Selecting the desired storage

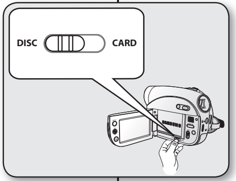
- Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC** or **CARD**. (**DISC ↔ CARD**)
  - DVD camcorder mode: To record movies on a DVD disc. ➥page 33
  - Digital camera mode: To record movie or photo images on memory card. ➥pages 56~57

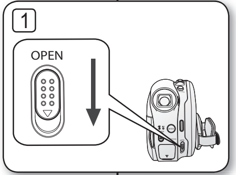
## INSERTING AND REMOVING A DISC

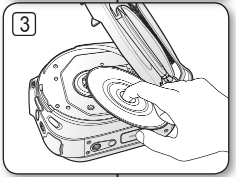
- When inserting a disc or closing the disc cover, do not apply excessive force. It may cause a malfunction.
- You cannot open the disc cover while loading.
- **You can use a new 3 1/2 inch(8cm) DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R or DVD+R DL (Dual Layer) disc for movie recording. Photos can not be recorded onto a DVD disc.**
  **A DVD disc is available only in the movie mode.**

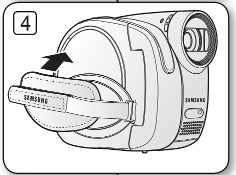
### Inserting a disc

1. Slide the **OPEN** switch in the direction of the arrow.
   - The disc cover will partially open.
2. Gently open the cover the rest of the way by hand.
3. Push the disc into the disc compartment until a click is heard.
   - The recording side of the disc must face the inside of the DVD camcorder.
   - Do not touch the pickup lens.
4. Gently push the disc cover to close it.
   - Once inserted, the disc is recognized and the **ACCESS/CHG** indicator blinks.
     Do not cut off the power supply during this time. Do not shake nor apply impact.
     It may cause a malfunction.
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only)









# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：錄製前

## 選擇儲存媒體（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

您可以將影片和照片影像錄製到所需的存儲媒體上（DVD 光碟或記憶卡），因此，應在開始錄製或播放之前選擇所需的儲存媒體。請注意，不能將相片影像錄製到 DVD 光碟上。

DVD 光碟僅可在影片模式下使用。

### 選擇所需的儲存形式

- 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC** 或 **CARD**。(**DISC↔CARD**)
  - DVD 攝錄放影機模式：在 DVD 光碟上錄製影片。➥ 第 33 頁
  - 數位相機模式：在記憶卡上錄製影片或相片影像。➥ 第 56~57 頁

## 插入和取出光碟

- 在插入光碟或關上光碟護蓋時，不可過度用力。否則可能會導致裝置故障。
- 在載入時，不可開啟光碟蓋。
- **您可以使用新型 3 1/2 英吋 (8cm) DVD-RW、DVD+RW、DVD-R 或 DVD+R DL ( 雙層 ) 光碟來錄製影片。不能將相片錄製到 DVD 光碟上。**
  **DVD 光碟僅可在影片模式下使用。**

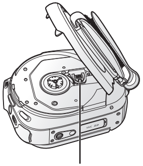
### 插入光碟

1. 沿著箭頭方向滑動 **OPEN** 開關。
   - 光碟護蓋將會部分開啟。
2. 以手動方式輕輕開啟剩餘光碟護蓋。
3. 將光碟推入光碟槽直至聽到卡嗒聲為止。
   - 光碟的錄製面必須朝向 DVD 攝錄放影機的內部。
   - 切勿觸摸拾音器鏡頭。
4. 輕輕推入光碟護蓋以將其關閉。
   - 插入之後，光碟會被識別，並且 **ACCESS/CHG** 指示燈會閃爍。
     在此期間，不可切斷電源供應。切勿振動或撞擊。否則可能會導致裝置故障。
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 )

- Move the grip belt so it does not interfere with inserting or ejecting the disc.
- The disc cover can be opened when the device is connected to an AC power adaptor or the battery pack, even if the power is off.

**Caution**
This product utilises a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
Do not open covers and do not look inside the product if interlock mechanism is damaged.

**Warning**
Be careful not to damage the interlock mechanism.



## When using a new disc: formatting a new disc

Formatting may be required if a new disc is inserted.

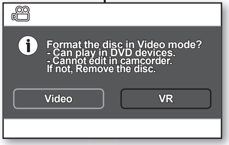
Recognition of the disc will start.

**For a DVD-R/+R DL disc**: Formatting will automatically begin.

**For a DVD-RW disc**: The Format menu is offered. Select the recording format, Video mode or VR mode.
Format the disc in the “**Disc Manage**” menu when you want to format again. ➥page 50

| | |
|---|---|
| Differences between Video and VR mode | Video (Video Mode) : If the disc has been finalized, you will be able to play the disc on most DVD players/recorders/drives. |
| | VR (VR Mode) : You can edit the disc on a DVD camcorder, but playback is possible only on a DVD recorder that supports VR mode. |

- Refer to page 8 for finalized disc compatibility.


Format the disc in Video mode?
- Can play in DVD devices.
- Cannot edit in camcorder.
If not, Remove the disc.

<When a DVD-RW disc is formatted.>

**For a DVD+RW disc**: The Format menu is offered. Formatting makes the recorded disc new and reusable by deleting all the data recorded on the disc.

---

- 移動手握帶以防影響插入或彈出光碟。
- 即使關閉電源，也可在將裝置連接到交流電源適配器或電池組時開啟光碟護蓋 。

**注意**
本產品使用雷射。使用本手冊中沒有描述的控制、調整或執行之步驟可能會導致危險輻射的曝露。
如果聯鎖機構被損壞，切勿開啟護蓋和查看產品內部。

**警告**
注意不要損壞聯鎖機構。

## 使用新光碟時：格式化新光碟

如果插入新光碟，可能需要進行格式化。
將開始識別光碟。
**對於 DVD-R/+R DL 光碟**：將自動開始格式化。
**對於 DVD-RW 光碟**：提供格式選單。選擇錄製格式、視訊模式或 VR 模式。
當您想再次進行格式化時，請在「**Disc Manage**」選單中格式化光碟。➥ 第 50 頁

| | |
|---|---|
| 視訊和 VR 模式之間的不同之處 | 視訊（視訊模式）: 如果已終結光碟，您將能在大多數 DVD 播放機 / 錄製機 / 磁碟機上播放光碟。 |
| | VR（VR 模式）: 您可以在 DVD 攝錄放影機上編輯光碟，但是僅能在支援 VR 模式的 DVD 錄製機上播放。 |

- 請參閱第 8 頁以獲得有關終結的光碟相容性的資訊。

**對於 DVD+RW 光碟**：提供格式選單。透過刪除錄製在光碟上的所有資料，格式化可使錄製的光碟得以更新和重新使用。

# DVD camcorder mode: before recording

## Removing a disc

1. Slide the **OPEN** switch in the direction of the arrow.
   - The disc cover will partially open.
2. Gently open the cover the rest of the way by hand.
3. Remove the disc.
   - While pushing down the center portion of the disc spindle, pick up the disc by the edges to remove.
4. Gently push the disc cover to close it.

- The Finalize/Format functions are not available at the low battery level under (■).
  Use the AC power adaptor when finalizing/formatting a DVD disc.
- You cannot open the disc cover while loading. Wait until disc loading is completed.
- Do not operate the **POWER** switch or remove a disc while accessing it. Doing so may damage the disc or the data on it.
- You can not proceed with recording when the disc cover is open. An icon and message are shown that recording is impossible with the disc cover open.
- It may take longer to open the cover when using DVD+RW rather than other type of disc. Especially, more than 5 minutes may be required if there are a lot of movie images recorded on the disc.

## RECORDABLE TIME

### Recordable time for movie images

| Storage | DVD+RW/-RW/-R | DVD+R DL |
|---|---|---|
| **Capacity**<br>**Movie Quality** | **1.4GB** | **2.6GB** |
| **Super Fine** | Approx. 20min | Approx. 35min |
| **Fine** | Approx. 30min | Approx. 53min |
| **Normal** | Approx. 60min | Approx. 106min |

Actual formatted capacity may be less as the internal firmware uses a portion of the memory.

- The above figures are measured under Samsung's standard recording test conditions and may differ depending on actual use.
- The DVD camcorder provides three quality options for movie recordings: "**Super Fine**," "**Fine**" and "**Normal**."
  The higher the quality setting is, the more memory is used.
- The compression rate increases when choosing lower quality settings. The higher the compression rate is, the longer the recording time will be. However, the picture quality will be lower.
- Movie image files recorded on other equipment are not playable on this DVD camcorder.

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：錄製前

## 取出光碟

1. 沿著箭頭方向滑動 **OPEN** 開關。
   - 光碟護蓋將會部分開啟。
2. 以手動方式輕輕開啟剩餘光碟護蓋。
3. 取出光碟。
   - 在按下光碟主軸的中央部分時，可握住光碟邊緣以將其取出。
4. 輕輕推入光碟護蓋以將其關閉。

- 終結 / 格式化功能不可用，當電池電量 低於（■）時。
  最終化 / 格式化 DVD 光碟時，請使用交流電源轉接器。
- 在載入時，不可開啟光碟護蓋。等待到裝載完成。
- 切勿在存取時操作 **POWER** 開關或取出光碟。
  這樣做可能會損壞光碟或其上的資料。
- 打開光碟蓋後不能繼續錄製。將顯示圖示和訊息，說明當光碟蓋打開時不能進行錄製。
- 使用 DVD+RW 比使用其他類型的光碟打開蓋子所需的時間可能會稍長。具體說來，如果光碟上錄製了大量影片影像，則可能需要 5 分鐘以上。

## 可錄製時間

### 可錄製影片影像的時間

| Storage | DVD+RW/-RW/-R | DVD+R DL |
|---|---|---|
| **容量**<br>**影片品質** | **1.4GB** | **2.6GB** |
| **Super Fine** | 大約 20 分鐘 | 大約 35 分鐘 |
| **Fine** | 大約 30 分鐘 | 大約 53 分鐘 |
| **Normal** | 大約 60 分鐘 | 大約 106 分鐘 |

由於內部韌體使用了一部分記憶體，因此實際格式化後的容量可能會小一些。

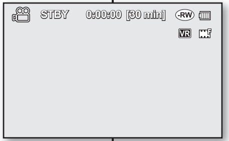
- 在錄製時，以上數字由 Samsung 在標準錄製測量條件下測得，並且可能因實際使用情況而異。
- DVD 攝錄放影機為影片錄製提供三種品質選項：**「Super Fine」**、**「Fine」和「Normal」**。
  品質設定越高，使用的記憶體就越多。
- 在選擇較低的品質設定時，壓縮率會增大 。 壓縮率越大，錄製時間將越長。但是，畫面品質將會降低。
- 透過其他設備錄製的影片影像檔案在此 DVD 攝錄放影機上無法播放。

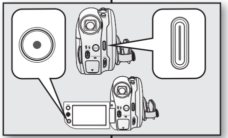
# DVD camcorder mode: recording/playback

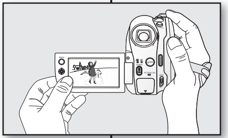
## RECORDING MOVIE IMAGES

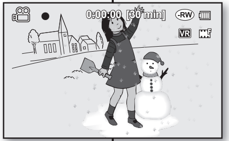
- You should set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC** before recording on a disc. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
- You can record movie images using the remote control. (SC-DX105 only) ➥page 13
- This DVD camcorder provides two **Recording start/stop** buttons. One is on the rear side of the camcorder and the other is on the LCD panel. Select the **Recording start/stop** button that works best for you.

1. Turn the DVD camcorder on.
    - Connect a power source to the DVD camcorder.
      (A battery pack or an AC power adaptor)
    - Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn the DVD camcorder on.
    - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
2. Check the subject on the LCD screen. (Lens and LCD)
    - Set the **Lens open/close** switch to open (◎). ➥page 10
3. Press the **Recording start/stop** button.
    - The (●) recording indicator will display, and recording will start.
    - Press the **Recording start/stop** button again to stop recording.
4. When recording is finished, turn the DVD camcorder off.









# DVD攝錄放影機模式：錄製 / 播放

## 錄製影片影像

- 在光碟上進行錄製之前，您應將**儲存模式**開關設定為**DISC**。
  （僅適用於SC-DX103/DX105）➥第30頁
- 您可以使用遙控器錄製影片影像。(僅適用於SC-DX105）➥第13頁
- 此DVD攝錄放影機具有兩個**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。其中一個位於攝錄放影機背面，另一個位於LCD面板上。選擇**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕（具有最佳工作效果）。

1. 開啟DVD攝錄放影機。
    - 將電源連接到DVD攝錄放影機。
      （電池組或交流電源適配器）
    - 向下滑動**POWER**開關以開啟DVD攝錄放影機。
    - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為**DISC**。(僅適用於SC-DX103/DX105）➥第30頁
2. 檢查LCD螢幕上的主體。(鏡頭和LCD）
    - 設定**鏡頭開啟 / 關閉**開關以開啟（◎）。➥第10頁
3. 按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。
    - (●）錄製指示器將會顯示，並且錄製將會開始。
    - 再次按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕以停止錄製。
4. 在完成錄製時，關閉DVD攝錄放影機。

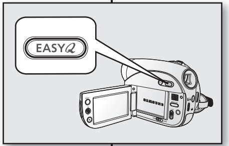
# DVD camcorder mode: recording/playback

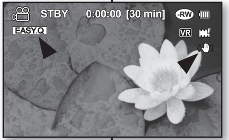
- The recorded movie image size is 720X480.
- Eject the battery pack when you have finished recording to prevent unnecessary battery power consumption.
- For on-screen information display, see page 22.
- For approximate recording time, see page 32.
- Sound is recorded from the internal stereo microphone at the front of the DVD camcorder. Take care that this microphone is not blocked.
- Before recording an important movie, make sure to test the recording function by checking if there is any problem with the audio and video recording.
- For various functions available when you record movie images. ➥pages 65~77
- Do not operate the power switch or remove a disc while accessing it. Doing so may damage the disc or the data on it.
- If you set the storage media to DVD, up to 253 movie images can be created on DVD-R/+RW/+R DL/ -RW (Video mode) discs, and up to 999 on DVD-RW (VR mode).
- You cannot proceed with recording when the disc cover is open. An icon and message are shown that recording is impossible with the disc cover open.
- If you press the **Recording start/stop** button while a menu operation is in process, the DVD camcorder starts to record.
- **If you turn the DVD camcorder off while recording, turn it on again with the storage media inserted in it: Repair of the storage media will be executed automatically with a message.** Do not turn off the power or remove storage media while the DVD camcorder is recovering it. Or it will damage the data or the storage media itself. The data recovery completes within a few minutes but sometimes it may take more time. Use the AC power adaptor when recovering data.

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：錄製 / 播放

- 所錄製影片影像的尺寸為 720X480.
- 在完成錄製後取出電池組，以避免不必要的電池耗電。
- 有關螢幕資訊顯示，請參閱第 22 頁。
- 有關大約的錄製時間，請參閱第 32 頁。
- 從 DVD 攝錄放影機前部的內置麥克風錄製聲音。注意不要堵塞麥克風。
- 在錄製重要影片之前，確保透過檢查音訊和視訊錄製是否存在問題來測試錄製功能。
- 對於在錄制影片影像時可用的各種功能。
  ➥ 第 65~77 頁
- 切勿在存取時操作電源開關或取出光碟。這麼做可能會損壞光碟或其上的資料。
- 如果您將儲存媒體設定為 DVD，則可在 DVD-R/+RW/+R DL/-RW（視訊模式）光碟上建立多達 253 張影片影像，並且可在 DVD-RW（VR 模式）上建立多達 999 個標題場景。
- 在光碟護蓋處於開啟狀態時，您不可繼續錄製。圖示和訊息顯示，不可在光碟護蓋開啟的情況下進行錄製。
- 如果您在選單操作過程中按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕，則 DVD 攝錄放影機會開始錄製。
- **如果在錄製時關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機，則在儲存媒體插入其中的情況下再次打開它。將自動執行儲存媒體修復並顯示訊息。**當 DVD 攝錄放影機正在修復儲存媒體時不要關閉電源或取出儲存媒體。否則會損壞資料或儲存媒體。資料恢復將在幾分鐘內完成，但有時可能需要稍長時間。恢複資料時請使用交流電源轉接器。

## RECORDING WITH EASE FOR BEGINNERS (EASY.Q MODE)





- With the EASY.Q function, most of the DVD camcorder settings are automatically adjusted, which relieves you of detailed adjustments.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power.
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥ page 30
2. Press the **EASY Q** button.
   - When you press the **EASY Q** button, most functions are set to off and the following functions are set to "**Auto**."
     - **"Scene Mode(AE)," "White Balance," "Exposure," "Anti-Shake(DIS)," "Digital Effect," "Focus," "Shutter," "Back Light," "C. Nite" etc.**
   - The (EASY.Q and Anti-Shake(DIS) (✋)) indicators appear on the screen at the same time.
3. To record movie images, press the **Recording start/stop** button.

### To cancel EASY.Q mode

Press the **EASY Q** button once again.

- The (EASY.Q and Anti-Shake(DIS) (✋)) indicators disappear from the screen.
- Almost all the settings will return to the settings that were set prior to activating EASY.Q mode.
- You cannot cancel the EASY.Q mode during recording.

- **Unavailable buttons during EASY.Q operation.**
  The following controls are unavailable because the items are automatically set.
  And the corresponding message ("**Release the EASY.Q!**") may appear if unavailable operations are attempted.
  - **Menu** button, **Joystick**.
- Release EASY.Q function, if you want to add any effect or settings to the images.
- The EASY.Q mode settings is released when the DVD camcorder is turned off.

## 初學者可輕鬆地進行錄製（EASY.Q 模式）

- 透過使用 EASY.Q 功能，大多數 DVD 攝錄放影機設定會自動調整，可使您無需詳細調整。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
2. 按下 **EASY Q** 按鈕。
   - 在按下 **EASY Q** 按鈕時，大多有選舉權功能會關閉，並且以下功能會設定為「**Auto**」。
     - **「Scene Mode(AE)」、「White Balance」、「Exposure」、「Anti-Shake(DIS)」、「Digital Effect」、「Focus」、「Shutter」、「Back Light」、「C. Nite」等。**
   - （EASY.Q 和防震（DIS）（✋））指示器會同時出現在螢幕上。
3. 要錄製影片影像，可按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。

### 要取消 EASY.Q 模式

再次按下 **EASY Q** 按鈕。

- （EASY.Q 和防震（DIS）（✋））指示器會從螢幕上消失。
- 幾乎所有設定都將返回到激活 EASY.Q 模式前所設定的設定。
- 您不能在錄製時取消 EASY.Q 模式。

- **在進行 EASY.Q 操作時不可用的按鈕。**
  下列控件不可用，因為它們是自動設定的。
  同時還可能會出現相應的訊息(「**Release the EASY.Q!**」)( 如果嘗試不可用的操作 )。
  - **Menu** 按鈕，**搖桿**。
- 解除 EASY.Q 功能 ( 如果您想將任何效果或設定新增到影像 )。
- 在關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機時，會解除 EASY.Q 模式設定。

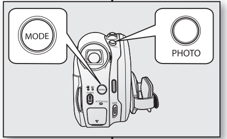
# DVD camcorder mode: recording/playback

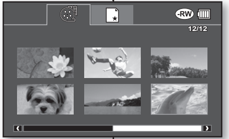
## CAPTURING STILL IMAGES DURING MOVIE IMAGE PLAYBACK(SC-DX103/ DX105 only)

- This function works only in the Play mode. ➥page 21
- If you press the **PHOTO** button during playback, it stops playing and saves one image of the current movie scene that is paused to the memory card.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power and set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**.
   - Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode. ➥page 21
   - The thumbnail index screen appears.
2. Use the **Joystick** to select the desired movie image.
   - To change the current thumbnail page, move the **Joystick** down to highlight the page bar, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select the page.
3. Press the **Joystick**.
   The selected file fills the screen and is played automatically.
4. Press the **PHOTO** button at the desired point.
   - A shutter sound is heard. The photo image is recorded on the memory card with the “**Photo capture**” message appeared.

- The still images captured from the movie images to the storage media are saved in 800x600 format.





0:00:59
-RW
VR
012

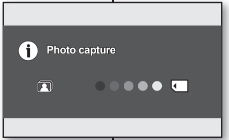


Photo capture

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：錄製 / 播放

## 在影片影像播放期間拍攝靜態影像（僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105）

- 此功能僅可在播放模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 如果您在播放期間按下 **PHOTO** 按鈕，便會停止播放，並會儲存一張目前影片場景（被暫停到記憶卡）的圖像。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源，並將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。
   - 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
     ➥ 第 21 頁
   - 會顯示縮略索引螢幕。
2. 使用**搖桿**選擇所需的影片影像。
   - 要變更目前的縮圖頁面，可向下移動**搖桿**以反白顯示頁面列，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇頁面。
3. 按下**搖桿**。
   選定檔案顯示在螢幕上並自動播放。
4. 按下 **PHOTO** 按鈕直至所需位置。
   - 會聽到按下快門的聲音。相片影像會錄製在記憶卡上，並且會出現「**Photo capture**」訊息。

- 從影片影像拍攝到儲存媒體的靜止影像會以 800x600 格式儲存。

## ZOOMING

Use the zoom function for close-up or wide-angle recording.
This DVD camcorder allows you to record using optical 34x power zoom and 1200x digital zoom.

- Zoom lever is on the top of the camcorder.
- You can also use zoom function by moving the **Joystick (W/T)** up or down.

### To zoom in

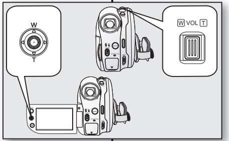
Slide the zoom lever towards **T** (telephoto).

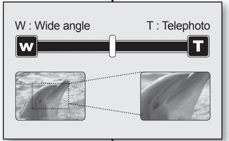
### To zoom out

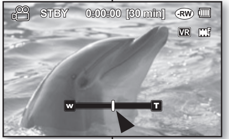
Slide the zoom lever towards **W** (wide-angle).

- The farther you slide the zoom lever, the quicker the zoom action.
- Zoom magnification over 34x is done through digital image processing, and is, therefore, called digital zoom. Digital zooming is possible up to 1200x.
  Set “**Digital Zoom**” to the desired value.
  ➥page 76
  You can set the digital zoom up to 1200x in movie mode.

- Be sure to keep your finger on the Zoom lever. If you move your finger off the zoom lever, the operation sound of the Zoom lever may be also recorded.
- The minimum possible distance between camcorder and subject while maintaining sharp focus is about 1 cm (about 0.39 inch) for wide angle and 50 cm (about 19.68 inch) for telephoto.
- The focus changes when zooming after focusing manually. Focus automatically or seize the desired sence by zooming before focusing manually.
  ➥page 70
- Optical zoom preserves the movie quality, but during digital zoom the image quality may suffer.







## 縮放

使用縮放功能進行特寫和廣角錄製。
本 DVD 攝錄放影機允許您使用光學 34 倍縮放和 1200 倍數位縮放來進行錄製。

- 縮放杆位於攝錄放影機的頂部。
- 您還可以透過向上或向下移動**搖桿 (W/T)** 來使用縮放功能。

### 要放大

將縮放桿滑向 **T**（望遠）。

### 要縮小

將縮放桿滑向 **W**（廣角）。

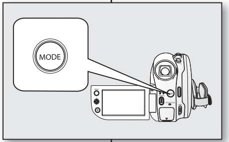
- 縮放桿滑動得越遠，縮放動作就越快。
- 由於放大倍率超過 34 倍的操作是透過數位影像處理來完成，因此稱為數位縮放。數位縮放可能高達 1200 倍。
  將**「Digital Zoom」**設定為所需值。
  ➥第 76 頁
  在影片模式下可將數位縮放設定高達 1200 倍。

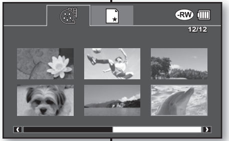
- 務必要按住縮放控制杆。如果松開縮放控制杆，則可能會把縮放控制杆的操作聲也錄進去。
- 攝錄放影機與物體保持清晰的最短可能距離對於廣角為 1 公分（約 0.39 英吋），對於攝遠鏡頭為 50 公分（約 19.68 英吋）。
- 手動對焦後進行縮放，對焦便會發生變更。自動對焦或在進行手動對焦之前透過縮放獲取所需的場景。
  ➥第 70 頁
- 光學縮放可保持影片品質，而數位縮放期間影像品質可能會受損。

# DVD camcorder mode: recording/playback

## PLAYING MOVIE IMAGES

- This function works only in the Play mode. ➥page 21
- You can switch to the Play mode by using the **MODE** button.
- You can find a desired movie image quickly using thumbnail index views.
- Use the playback-related buttons on the remote control. (SC-DX105 only) ➥page 13





0:00:59
-RW
VR
012

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power and open the LCD screen.
    - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
    - Adjust brightness or color of the LCD screen. ➥page 79
2. Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode.
    - The thumbnail index view appears. The thumbnail highlight is on the latest created or played file.
    - To change the current thumbnail page, move the **Joystick** down to highlight the page bar, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select the page.
3. Move the **Joystick** to select the desired movie image, then press the **Joystick**.
    - The selected file fills the screen and is played automatically.
    - To stop playback, move the **Joystick** down.

- Press **Display (**|□|**)**button to toggle the OSD (On Screen Display) function on and off.
- Depending on the amount of data to be played back, it may take some time for the playback images to appear.
- Movies edited on a PC may not be displayed on this DVD camcorder.
- Movies recorded on another camcorder may not be played on this DVD camcorder.

---

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：錄製 / 播放

## 播放影片影像

- 此功能僅能在播放模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 您可切換至播放模式（透過使用 **MODE** 按鈕）。
- 您可以使用縮略索引視圖快速查找所需的影片影像。
- 使用遙控器上的播放相關按鈕。（僅適用於 SC-DX105）➥ 第 13 頁

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源和打開 LCD 螢幕。
    - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
    - 調整 LCD 螢幕的亮度或色彩。➥ 第 79 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
    - 會顯示縮略索引視圖。最近建立或播放的檔案上會反白顯示縮圖。
    - 要變更目前的縮圖頁面，可向下移動**搖桿**以反白顯示頁面列，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇頁面。
3. 移動**搖桿**以選擇所需的影片影像，然後按下**搖桿。**
    - 選定檔案顯示在螢幕上並自動播放。
    - 要停止播放同，可向下移動**搖桿**。

- 按下**顯示**（|□|）按鈕以開啟和關閉 OSD（螢幕顯示）功能。
- 因播放的資料數量不同，可能稍後才會出現播放影像。
- 電腦上編輯的影片可能在此 DVD 攝錄放影機上無法顯示。
- 在另一台攝錄放影機上錄製的影片在此 DVD 攝錄放影機上可能無法播放。

## Adjusting the volume

- You can control the volume by using the zoom lever during playback.
- You can hear the recorded sound from the built-in speaker.
- The level can be adjusted anywhere between 0 and 19.

If you close the LCD screen while playing, you will not hear the sound from the speaker.

## Various playback operations

### Playback / Pause / Stop

- Playback and Pause functions alternate when you press the **Joystick**.
- Move the **Joystick** down to stop playback.
- You can do the same operation by using the remote control (⏯/⏹). (SC-DX105 only)

### Search playback

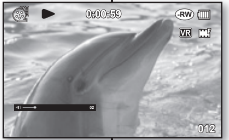
- Move the **Joystick** right or left and hold during playback.
  - RPS (Reverse Playback Search) rate: x2 → x16 → x2
  - FPS (Forward Playback Search) rate: x2 → x16 → x2
- To resume normal playback, press the **Joystick**.
- You can do the same operation by using the remote control (⏪/⏩). (SC-DX105 only)

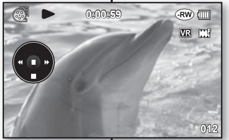
### Skip playback

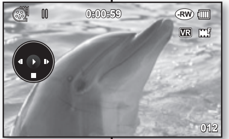
- Move the **Joystick** right or left during playback.
  - If you move the **Joystick** left within 3 seconds after the movie image starts, the previous image is played back.
  - If you move the **Joystick** left 3 seconds after the movie image starts, the current image starts from the beginning.
  - If you move the **Joystick** right, the next image is played back.
- You can do the same operation by using the remote control (⏮/⏭). (SC-DX105 only)

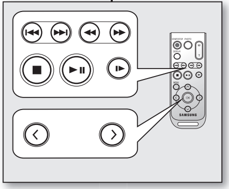
### Slow playback

- Pause the playback by pressing the **Joystick**, then move the **Joystick** right or left. The movie image plays forward or reverse at the 1/2x speed.
- To resume normal playback, press the **Joystick**.
- Slow playback continues for 3 minutes.
- You can do the same operation by using the remote control (⏵). (SC-DX105 only)
- When pressing the (‹) or (›) buttons on the remote control during slow playback, it slowly plays back reversely or forward. (SC-DX105 only)









<SC-DX105 only>

## 調整音量

- 在播放時，您可以透過使用縮放杆來控制音量。
- 您可從內置喇叭中聽到錄製的聲音。
- 可在 0 至 19 等級中隨意調整。

如果在播放時關閉 LCD 螢幕，則您將無法從喇叭中聽到聲音。

## 不同的播放操作

### 播放 / 暫停 / 停止

- 會交替顯示播放和暫停功能（當您按下**搖桿**時）。
- 向下移動**搖桿**以停止播放。
- 透過使用遙控器（⏯ / ⏹）您可執行相同的操作。（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

### 搜尋播放

- 向右或向左移動**搖桿**，並在播放時按下。
  - RPS（倒退播放搜尋）速率：x2 → x16 → x2
  - FPS（向前播放搜尋）速率：x2 → x16 → x2
- 要恢復正常播放，可按下**搖桿**。
- 您可以透過使用遙控器（⏪ / ⏩）來執行相同的操作。（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

### 略過播放

- 在播放時，向右或向左移動**搖桿**。
  - 如果您在影片影像開始後 3 秒鐘內向左移動**搖桿**，則會播放上一幅影像。
  - 如果您在影片影像開始後 3 秒鐘內向左移動**搖桿**，則會從頭開始播放目前影像。
  - 如果您向右移動**搖桿**，則會播放下一幅影像。
- 透過使用遙控器（⏮/⏭），您可執行相同的操作（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

### 慢動作播放

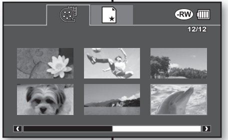
- 透過按下**搖桿**暫停播放，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**。影片影像會以 1/2 倍的速度向前或向後播放。
- 要恢復正常播放，可按下**搖桿**。
- 慢速播放持續 3 分鐘。
- 您可以透過使用遙控器來執行相同的操作（⏵）。（僅適用於 SC-DX105）
- 如果在慢速播放期間按下遙控器上的（‹）或（›）按鈕，則會向後或向前慢速播放。（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

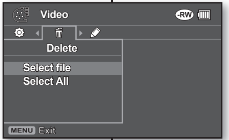
# DVD camcorder mode: editing movie image

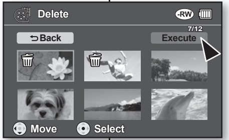
## DELETING IMAGES ((-RW VR))

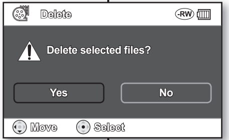
- This function works only in the Play mode.
- You can delete undesired movie images recorded on the disc.
- This function works only on a DVD-RW disc (VR mode).
- An image that has been deleted cannot be recovered.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power.
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. ➥page 30
2. Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode.
   - The thumbnail index view appears.
3. Press the **MENU** button.
4. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Delete**."
5. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select the desired option ("**Select file**" or "**Select All**"), then press the **Joystick**.
   - "**Select file**": Deletes the individual image.
     - To delete the individual image, use the **Joystick** to select the image to delete.
       The (🗑) indicator is displayed on the selected images.
       Pressing the **Joystick** toggles between the thumbnail image being selected for deletion (the (🗑) indicator appears on image) or not (the (🗑) indicator is removed from image).
       Move the **Joystick** up to select "**Execute**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - "**Select All**": Deletes all images.
     - Move the Joystick up to select "**Execute**," then press the **Joystick**.
6. The message according to the selected option will appear. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Yes**," the press the **Joystick**.
   - After completion, the selected images will be deleted.(Accordingly, the deleted files also disappear in playlist. ➥page 45)









Delete selected files?

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：編輯影片影像

## 刪除影像 ((-RW VR))

- 此功能僅在播放模式中操作。
- 您可以刪除在光碟上錄製的不需要的影片影像。
- 此功能僅在 DVD-RW 光碟（VR 模式）上操作。
- 所刪除的影像將無法恢復。

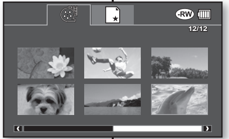
1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。➥ 第 30 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
   - 會顯示縮略索引視圖。
3. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
4. 將**搖桿**向左或向右移動以選擇「**Delete**」。
5. 將**搖桿**向上或向下移動以選擇所需選項（**「Select file」**或**「Select All」**），然後按下**搖桿**。
   - **「Select file」**：刪除單個影像。
     - 要刪除單個影像，可使用**搖桿**選擇影像進行刪除。
       （🗑）指示器會顯示在所選擇的影像上。按下**搖桿**可在所選擇要刪除的縮略圖影像間進行切換（（🗑）指示器會出現在影像上）或（（🗑）指示器不會從影像中移除）。將**搖桿**向上移動以選擇**「Execute」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - **「Select All」**：刪除所有影像。
     - 將搖桿向上移動以選擇**「Execute」**，然後按下**搖桿**
6. 訊息將視所選項目而出現。將**搖桿**向右或向左移動，以選擇**「Yes」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 完成後，將會刪除所選的影像。（刪除的檔案也會相應地從播放清單中消失。➥ 第 45 頁）

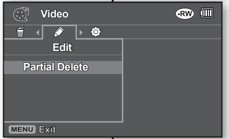
# DELETING A SECTION OF A MOVIE IMAGE (PARTIAL DELETE) ((-RW VR))

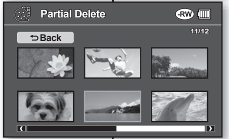
- This function works only in the Play mode. ➥page 21
- Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
- A movie image can be partially deleted.

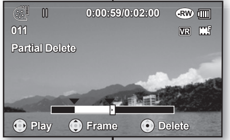
1. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Edit**."
2. Press the **Joystick** to select "**Partial Delete**."
3. Use the **Joystick** to select the desired movie image, then press the **Joystick**.
   - The selected file fills the screen with paused.
   - To return, use the **Joystick** to select "**Back,**" then press the **Joystick**.
4. Move the **Joystick** right to play the movie image.
5. Press the **Joystick** at the start point you delete.
   - The start point of deletion will be marked with "▼."
6. Move the **Joystick** right to search the end point of deletion. Press the **Joystick**.
   - The end point of deletion will be marked with "▼."
7. Press the **Joystick** to delete the selected part.
   - The message "**Partial Delete? Selected part of a file will be deleted**." will appear.
8. Move the **Joystick** left to select "**Yes**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - The selected part of the movie image will be deleted.

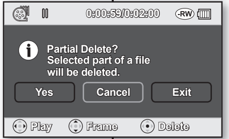
- Do not remove the battery pack or the AC power adaptor while the partial deletion is in progress. The file can be damaged.
- A deleted part of the movie image can not be recovered.
- Partial deletion is not available when the recording is less than 3 seconds.
- Partial deletion is not available when the section or remaining time is less than 3 seconds.
- When partial deletion is executed, related movie images in the playlist are partially deleted.











Partial Delete?
Selected part of a file
will be deleted.

# 刪除影片影像部分（部分刪除） ((-RW VR))

- 此功能僅能在播放模式下操作。➥ 第21頁
- 將**儲存模式**開關設定為**DISC**。（僅適用於SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第30頁
- 影片影像可被部分刪除。

1. 按下**MENU**按鈕，然後將搖**桿**向右或向左移動以選擇「**Edit**」。
2. 按下**搖桿**以選擇「**Partial Delete**」。
3. 使用**搖桿**選擇所需的影片影像，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 所選擇的檔案會暫時填滿螢幕。
   - 要返回，使用**搖桿**選擇**「Back」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
4. 將**搖桿**向右移動以播放影片影像。
5. 在您刪除的起始點位置按下**搖桿**。
   - 刪除的起始點將以「**▼.**」標明。
6. 將**搖桿**向右移動以搜尋刪除的結束點。按下**搖桿**
   - 刪除的結束點將以「**▼.**」標明。
7. 按下**搖桿**以刪除選取的的部分。
   - 將會出現訊息「**Partial Delete?Selected part of a file will be deleted.**」。
8. 將**搖桿**向左移動以選擇「**Yes**」，然後按下**搖桿**
   - 將會刪除選定的影片影像部分。

- 在進行部分刪除時不要移除電池組或交流電源適配器。這樣做可能會損壞檔案。
- 刪除的影片影像部分可能無法恢復。
- 當錄製內容不足3秒時，不能進行部分刪除。
- 對於不足3秒的影片影像片段和剩餘時間不足3秒片段，不能進行部分刪除。
- 在執行部分刪除時，可刪除部分播放清單中的相關影片影像。

# DVD camcorder mode: editing movie image

## PLAYLIST (⊙(-RW VR))

### What's a Playlist?

- You can create a playlist on the same disc by gathering your favorite scenes from the recorded movie images. When creating or deleting a playlist, the original movie image will not be erased. Adding or deleting movie images from a playlist does not affect the original movie images.
- This function works only on a DVD-RW disc (VR mode).
  You should format the DVD-RW to VR mode before recording. ➥page 50

  **Example:** You have recorded a few scenes on a DVD disc. You want to save the original recording, but you also want to create a digest by putting your favorite scenes together.
  In this case, you can create a playlist by selecting your favorite scenes, leaving the originall recording as it is.

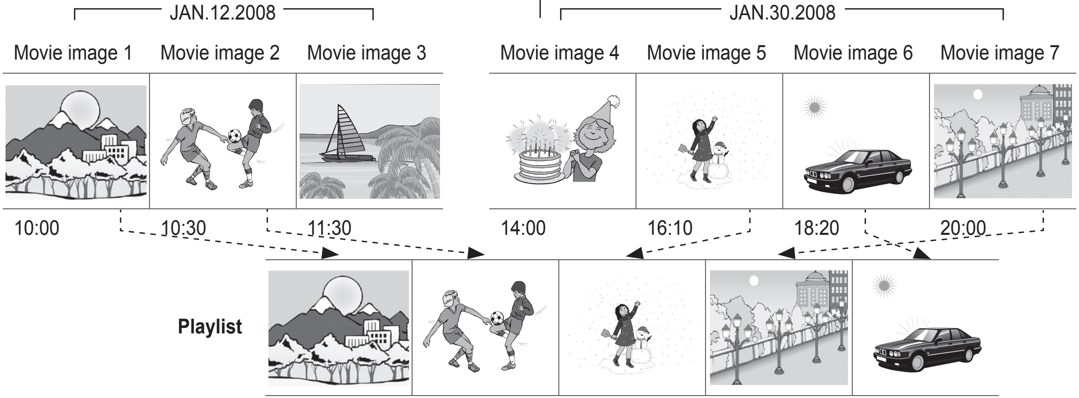
# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：編輯影片影像

## 播放清單 (⊙(-RW VR))

### 什麼是播放清單？

- 透過從錄製的影片影像中搜集您最愛的場景，您可以在相同的光碟上建立播放清單。在建立或刪除播放清單時，將無法刪除原始的影片影像。從播放清單中新增或刪除影片影像不會影響原始影片影像。
- 此功能僅在DVD-RW光碟（VR模式）上操作。
  在錄製之前，您應將DVD-RW格式化為VR模式。➥第50頁

  **例如：**您已在DVD光碟上錄製了幾個場景。您想儲存原始錄製，但又想透過將您最愛的場景放在一起來建立一個匯集。
  在此情況下，您可以透過選擇您最愛的場景來建立播放清單，而使原始錄製保持原樣。

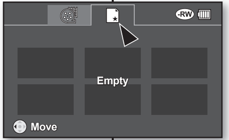

JAN.12.2008
JAN.30.2008
Movie image 1
Movie image 2
Movie image 3
Movie image 4
Movie image 5
Movie image 6
Movie image 7
10:00
10:30
11:30
14:00
16:10
18:20
20:00
Playlist

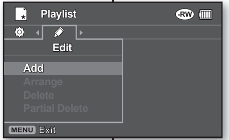
## Creating a playlist

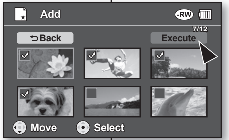
- This function works only in Play mode.
- Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
- You can create a playlist by gathering your favorites from the recorded movie images.
- You can create only one playlist.

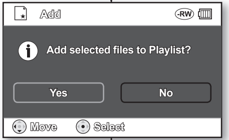
1. Move the **Joystick** to select the playlist(☆) tab in the thumbnail index view.
    - Thumbnail index view of the playlist appears.
2. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Edit**."
3. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Add**," then press the **Joystick**.
4. Use the **Joystick** to select the movie images to add to the playlist.
    - The (✓) indicator is displayed on the selected movie images.
    - Pressing the **Joystick** toggles between the movie thumbnail image being selected for creating a playlist (the (✓) indicator appears on image) or not (the (✓) indicator is removed from image).
    - To return, use the **Joystick** to select "**Back**," then press the **Joystick**.
5. Use the **Joystick** to select "**Execute**," then press the **Joystick**.
    - The message "**Add selected files to Playlist?**" appears.
6. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Yes**," then press the **Joystick**.
    - The selected files are added to the playlist.
    - You can play a playlist in the same manner as you play a movie image. ➥page 38

- If free space available on the disc is insufficient, delete unnecessary movie images.
- Up to 64 movie images can be included in the playlist.
- When playing back the playlist, the counter refers to total counter of the playlist.
- To return to the thumbnail index view of movie images, use the **Joystick** to select the play(◎) tab.









Add selected files to Playlist?

## 建立播放清單

- 此功能僅可在播放模式下操作。
- 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
- 透過從錄製的影片影像中搜集您的最愛，您可以建立播放清單。
- 您只能建立一份播放清單。

1. 移動**搖桿**以選擇縮圖索引視圖中的播放清單（☆）標籤。
    - 播放清單的縮圖索引視圖會出現。
2. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Edit」**。
3. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Add」**然後按下**搖桿**。
4. 使用**搖桿**選擇影片影像以新增至播放清單。
    - （✓）指示器會顯示在所選的影片影像上。
    - 按下**搖桿**可在所選擇要建立播放清單的縮略圖影像間進行切換（（✓）指示器會出現在影像上）或（（✓）指示器不會從影像中移除）。
    - 要返回，可使用**搖桿**選擇「**Back**」，然後按下**搖桿**。
5. 使用**搖桿**選擇**「Execute」**，然後按下**搖桿。**
    - 將會出現「**Add selected files to Playlist?**」訊息。
6. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Yes」**，然後按下搖**桿。**
    - 所選擇的檔案會被新增至播放清單中。
    - 您可以與播放影片影像相同的方式播放播放清單。➥ 第 38 頁

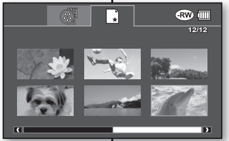
- 如果光碟上的可用空間不足，可刪除不必要的影片影像。
- 播放清單中可包括多達 64 張影片影像。
- 在播放播放清單時，計時器指播放清單的總計時。
- 要返回至影片影像的縮圖索引視圖，可使用**搖桿**選擇播放（◎）標籤。

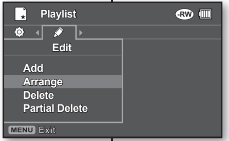
# DVD camcorder mode: editing movie image

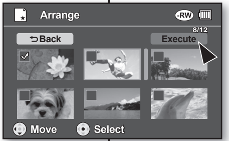
## Arranging the order of movie images within a playlist

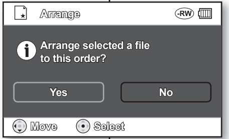
- This function works only in Play mode.
- Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
- You can arrange movie images within a playlist by moving them to desired position.

1. Move the **Joystick** to select the playlist(☐) tab in the thumbnail index view.
    - Thumbnail index view of the playlist appears.
2. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Edit**."
3. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Arrange**," then press the **Joystick**.
4. Use the **Joystick** to select the movie images to arrange.
    - The (✓) indicator is displayed on the selected movie image.
    - Pressing the **Joystick** toggles between the movie thumbnail image being selected for arrangement within the (the (✓) indicator appears on image) or not (the (✓) indicator is removed from image).
    - A bar will also appear next to the selected movie image.
5. Move the **Joystick** to select the desired position, then press the **Joystick**.
    - The selected file is arranged in the desired position.
    - To return, use the **Joystick** to select "**Back,**" then press the **Joystick**.
6. To execute, use the **Joystick** to select "**Execute,**" then press the **Joystick**.
    - The message "**Arrange selected a file to this order?**" appears.
7. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Yes**," then press the **Joystick**.
    - The selected files are arranged to the selected position.









Arrange selected a file to this order?

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：編輯影片影像

## 在播放清單內排定影片影像的順序

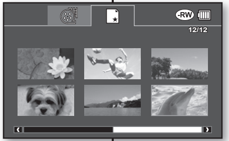
- 此功能僅可在播放模式下操作。
- 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
- 可在播放清單中將影片影像移至所需位置來排列這些影片影像。

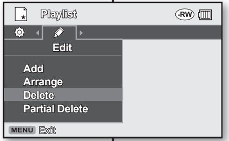
1. 移動**搖桿**以選擇縮圖索引視圖中的播放清單（☐）標籤。
    - 播放清單的縮圖索引視圖會出現。
2. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Edit」**。
3. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Arrange」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
4. 使用**搖桿**選擇影片影像以進行排列。
    - （✓）指示器會顯示在所選的影片影像上。
    - 按下**搖桿**會在播放清單內選擇排列的影片縮略圖影像間進行切換（（✓）指示器會出現在影像上）或（（✓）指示器不會從影像中移除）。
    - 還將會在所選擇的影片影像旁邊出現列。
5. 移動**搖桿**以選擇所需的位置，然後按下**搖桿**。
    - 選擇的檔案將會在所需的位置進行排列。
    - 要返回，可使用**搖桿**選擇**「Back」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
6. 要執行，可使用**搖桿**選擇**「Execute」**，然後按下**搖桿。**
    - 將會顯示訊息**「Arrange selected a file to this order?」。**
7. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Yes」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
    - 選擇的文件會被排列到所需的位置。

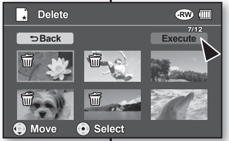
## Deleting movie images from a playlist

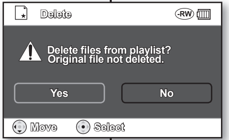
- This function works only in Play mode.
- Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
- You can delete undesired movie images within a playlist.

1. Move the **Joystick** to select the playlist(☆) tab in the thumbnail index view.
   - Thumbnail index view of the playlist appears.
2. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select “**Edit**.”
3. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select “**Delete**,” then press the **Joystick**.
4. Use the **Joystick** to select the movie images to delete.
   - The (🗑) indicator is displayed on the selected movie image.
   - Pressing the **Joystick** toggles between the movie thumbnail image being selected for deleting from the playlist (the (🗑) indicator appears on image) or not (the (🗑) indicator is removed from image).
   - To return, use the **Joystick** to select “**Back**,” then press the **Joystick**.
5. Use the **Joystick** to select “**Execute**,” then press the **Joystick**.
   - The message “**Delete files from playlist? Original file not deleted**.” appears.
6. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select “**Yes**,” then press the **Joystick**.
   - The selected files are deleted.









Delete files from playlist?
Original file not deleted.

## 從播放清單中刪除影片影像

- 此功能僅可在播放模式下操作。
- 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
- 您可以在播放清單內刪除不需要的影片影像。

1. 移動搖**桿**以選擇縮圖索引視圖中的播放清單（☆）標籤。
   - 播放清單的縮圖索引視圖會出現。
2. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動搖桿以選擇**「Edit」**。
3. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Delete」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
4. 使用**搖桿**選擇要刪除的影片影像。
   - （🗑）指示器會顯示在所選的影片影像上。
   - 按下**搖桿**會在選擇從播放清單中刪除的影片縮略圖影像間進行切換（（🗑）指示器會出現在影像上）或（（🗑）指示器不會從影像中移除）。
   - 要返回，可使用**搖桿**選擇**「Back」**，然後按下**搖桿。**
5. 使用**搖桿**選擇「 **Execute** 」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 將會出現**「Delete files from playlist?Original file not deleted.」**訊息。
6. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Yes** 」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 選取的檔案將被刪除。

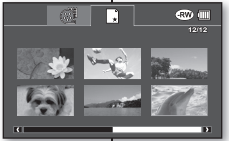
# DVD camcorder mode: editing movie image

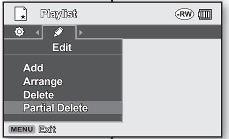
## Deleting a section of movie image within a playlist

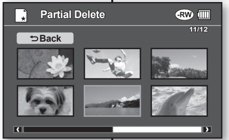
- This function works only in Play mode.
- Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
- You can delete a section of a movie image within a playlist.

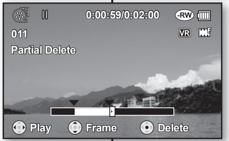
1. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Edit**."
2. Press the **Joystick** to select "**Partial Delete**."
3. Move the **Joystick** to select the desired movie image, then press the **Joystick**.
   - The selected file fills the screen with paused.
4. Move the **Joystick** right to play the movie image.
5. Press the **Joystick** at the start point you delete.
   - The start point of deletion will be marked with "▼."
6. Use the **Joystick** to search the end point of deletion. Press the **Joystick**.
   - The end point of deletion will be marked with "▼."
7. Press the **Joystick** to delete the selected part.
   - The message "**Partial Delete? Selected part of a file will be deleted**." will appear.
8. Move the **Joystick** left to select "**Yes**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - The selected part of the movie image will be deleted.

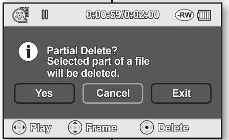
- Do not remove the battery pack or the AC power adaptor while the partial deletion is in progress. The file can be damaged.
- A deleted part of the movie image can not be recovered.
- Partial deletion is not available when the recording time is less than 3 seconds.
- Partial deletion is not available when the section or remaining time is less than 3 seconds.











Partial Delete?
Selected part of a file
will be deleted.

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：編輯影片影像

## 刪除播放清單中的影片影像部分

- 此功能僅可在播放模式下操作。
- 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
- 您可以刪除播放清單中的影片影像部分。

1. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Edit**」。
2. 按下**搖桿**以選擇「**Partial Delete**」。
3. 移動**搖桿**以選擇所需的影片影像，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 所選擇的檔案會暫時填滿螢幕。
4. 向右移動**搖桿**以播放影片影像。
5. 在您想刪除的起始點位置按下**搖桿**。
   - 刪除的起始點將以「 ▼. 」標明。
6. 使用**搖桿**選擇刪除的結束點。按下**搖桿**。
   - 刪除的結束點將以「 ▼. 」標明。
7. 按下**搖桿**以刪除選取的部分。
   - 將會出現訊息「**Partial Delete?Selected part of a file will be deleted.**」。
8. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Yes**」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 將會刪除選定的影片影像部分。

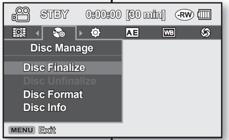
- 在進行部分刪除時不要移除電池組或交流電源適配器。這樣做可能會損壞檔案。
- 刪除的影片影像部分可能無法恢復。
- 當錄製內容的時間不足 3 秒時，不能進行部分刪除。
- 對於不足 3 秒的影片影像片段和剩餘時間不足 3 秒片段，不能進行部分刪除。

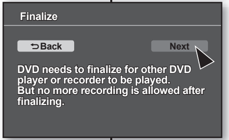
# DVD camcorder mode: disc manage

## DISC FINALIZE ((-RW -R +R DL))

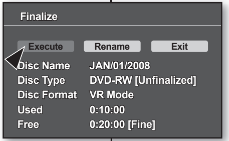
- This function works only in the Record mode ➥page 21
- To play the contents of a DVD-RW/-R/+R DL on other DVD players/recorders/drives, you must finalize the disc.When finalizing, there should be enough power in the batteries. If the AC power adaptor is to be used, make sure that the jack is properly connected. A power cut during finalizing may disrupt the disc from replaying.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power. ➥page 21
2. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
3. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select **"Disc Manage."**
4. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select **"Disc Finalize,"** then press the **Joystick**.
   - You can simply finalize the disc using the **FINALIZE** button on the DVD camcorder.
5. The message **"DVD needs to finalize for other DVD player or recorder to be played. But no more recording is allowed after finalizing**." will appear. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Next**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - Disc information will appear.
6. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select **"Execute,"** then press the **Joystick**.
   - To exit, use the **Joystick** to select **"Exit,"** the press the **Joystick**.
7. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Yes**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - The message showing that the disc is being finalized will appear.

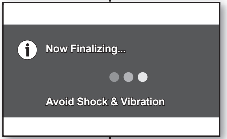




DVD needs to finalize for other DVD player or recorder to be played. But no more recording is allowed after finalizing.



Disc Name JAN/01/2008
Disc Type DVD-RW [Unfinalized]
Disc Format VR Mode
Used 0:10:00
Free 0:20:00 [Fine]



Now Finalizing...

Avoid Shock & Vibration

**WARNING**

During finalizing, do not cause impact or vibration to your DVD camcorder. This could cause a malfunction.

- The finalize function is not available at the battery level under (■).
- Once finalized, the movie images or a playlist in the disc cannot be deleted or edited.
- Time required for finalizing may differ by disc type.
- Refer to page 8 for finalized disc compatibility.
- Playback is not guaranteed in all DVD players/recorders/drives. For compatibility details, refer to your DVD players/recorders/drives owner's manual.
- Once the DVD-R/+R DL disc is finalized, you cannot re-record it in the DVD camcorder.
- You may play back DVD+RW discs on other devices without finalizing them.
- You cannot make an additional recording on a DVD-RW disc without unfinalizing it after it is finalized.

---

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：光碟管理

## 光碟終結 ((-RW -R +R DL))

- 此功能僅能在錄製模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 要在其他 DVD 播放機 / 攝錄放影機 / 磁碟機上播放 DVD-RW/-R/+R DL 的內容，您必須終結此光碟。在終結時，電池應該具有足夠的電源。如果要使用交流電源適配器，請確保插孔連接正確。在終結時斷開電源可能會中斷光碟的重新播放。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。➥ 第 21 頁
2. 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
3. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Disc Manage** 」。
4. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Disc Finalize** 」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 您僅需使用 DVD 攝錄放影機上的 **FINALIZE** 按鈕來終結此光碟。
5. 將會出現訊息「 **DVD needs to finalize for other DVD player or recorder to be played. But no more recording is allowed after finalizing.**」。向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Next** 」，然後按**搖桿**。
   - 將顯示光碟資訊。
6. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Execute** 」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 要結束，可使用**搖桿**選擇**「Exit」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
7. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Yes」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 表明正在終結光碟的訊息將會出現。

**警告**

在終結期間，不可撞擊或振動您的 DVD 攝錄放影機。否則可能會使其發生故障。

- 此結終功能在電池電量低於（■）時不可用。
- 終結後，無法刪除或編輯光碟中的影片影像或播放清單。
- 終結所需的時間可能會因光碟類型而異。
- 請參閱第 8 頁以獲得有關終結光碟相容性的資訊。
- 不能保證在所有 DVD 播放機 / 攝錄放影機 / 磁碟機中都能播放。有關相容性的詳細資訊，請參閱您的 DVD 播放機 / 攝錄放影機 / 磁碟機使用者手冊。
- 終結 DVD-R/+R DL 光碟後，您無法在 DVD 攝錄放影機中重新錄製。
- 無需終結便可在其他裝置上播放 DVD+RW 光碟。
- 終結後，未經取消終結便無法在 DVD-RW 光碟上進行其他錄製。

# DVD camcorder mode: disc manage

## Playing back on a PC with a DVD drive

The DVD disc can be played on a PC with a DVD-running media (DVD drive).

1. Turn on your PC.
2. Insert a finalized disc into the DVD drive of the PC.
   - DVD playback application software starts and the disc will play.
   - If DVD playback application does not start automatically, run the application by navigating through the start menu.

- Use a DVD drive compatible with 3 1/2 inch (8cm) disc.
- The recorded files on DVD may not play in ‘Windows Media Player’.
- Microsoft, Windows and Windows logo are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Video and audio may pause or skip when you play back a DVD disc on your PC. If this occurs, copy the data into your hard disk drive.

## Playing back a finalized disc on a DVD player / recorder

**To playback a disc**

You can playback finalized DVD-R/-RW (Video mode)/+R DL discs on DVD players/recorders.

Playback is not guaranteed in all DVD players/recorders. For compatibility details, refer to your DVD player/recorder owner’s manual.

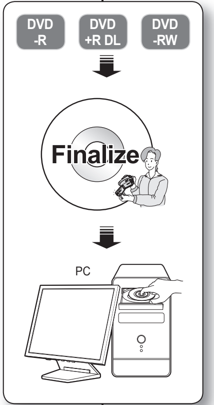
Most DVD players/recorders can play back a DVD+RW disc that has not been finalized.

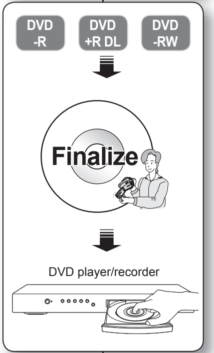
- Refer to the page 8 for finalized disc compatibility.

1. Turn on the DVD player/recorder.
2. Insert the finalized DVD disc into the tray of a DVD player/recorder.
   It may start playing automatically or press the PLAY button to start.
   For further details on playing back DVD discs, refer to the DVD player/recorder user’s manual.

**To playback DVD-RW discs recorded in VR mode:**

A finalized DVD-RW in VR mode can be played back in a DVD recorder that supports it.





# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：光碟管理

## 使用 DVD 光碟機在電腦上播放

可以透過 DVD 執行媒體（DVD 光碟機）在電腦上播放 DVD。

1. 開啟電腦。
2. 將終結的光碟插入電腦的 DVD 光碟機中。
   - DVD 播放應用程式軟體開啟，同時光碟將會播放。
   - 如果 DVD 播放應用程式無法自動開啟，可透過開始選單執行應用程式。

- 使用與 3 1/2 英吋（8 公分）光碟相容的 DVD 光碟機。
- 在 DVD 上錄製的檔案可能無法在「Windows Media Player」中播放。
- Microsoft、Windows 和 Windows 標誌是 Microsoft Corporation 在美國和／或其他國家的註冊商標。
- 在電腦上播放 DVD 光碟時，可能會暫停會跳過視訊和音訊。如果出現此種情況，可將資訊複製到您的硬碟機中。

## 在 DVD 播放機／攝錄放影機上播放終結的光碟

**要播放光碟**

您可以在 DVD 播放機／攝錄放影機上播放終結的 DVD-R/-RW（視訊模式）/+R DL 光碟。

不能保證在所有 DVD 播放機／攝錄放影機中播放。有關相容性的詳細資訊，請參閱您的 DVD 播放機／攝錄放影機使用者手冊。

大多數 DVD 播放機／攝錄放影機都可以播放尚未終結的 DVD+RW 光碟。

- 請參閱第 8 頁以獲得有關終結光碟相容性的資訊。

1. 開啟 DVD 播放機／錄製機。
2. 將終結的 DVD 光碟插入 DVD 播放機／攝錄放影機的托架中。
   可自動開始播放，或按下「播放」按鈕以開始播放。
   有關播放 DVD 光碟的更多詳細資訊，請參閱 DVD 播放機／攝錄放影機使用者手冊。

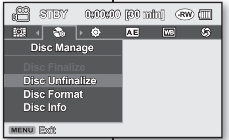
**要播放在 VR 模式下錄製的 DVD-RW 光碟：**

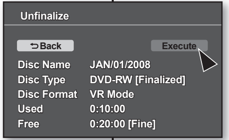
在 VR 模式下終結的 DVD-RW 可以在支援它的 DVD 攝錄放影機中播放。

## DISC UNFINALIZE ((-RW))

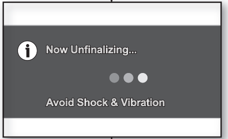
- This function works only in the Record mode. ➥page 21
- If a DVD-RW disc had been finalized in the VR mode or Video mode, you can unfinalize the disc for further recording. When unfinalizing, there should be enough power in the batteries. If the AC power adaptor is to be used, make sure that the jack is properly connected.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power. ➥page 21
2. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
3. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Disc Manage**."
4. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Disc Unfinalize**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - You can simply unfinalize the disc using the **FINALIZE** button on the DVD camcorder.
   - Disc information will appear.
5. Move the **Joystick** to select "**Execute**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - To exit, use the **Joystick** to select "**Back**," the press the **Joystick**.
6. The message "**Make the disc recordable?**" will appear. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Yes,**" then press the **Joystick**.
   - The message showing that the disc is being unfinalized will appear, and the disc will be unfinalized.




Unfinalize

Disc Name JAN/01/2008
Disc Type DVD-RW [Finalized]
Disc Format VR Mode
Used 0:10:00
Free 0:20:00 [Fine]


Now Unfinalizing...

Avoid Shock & Vibration

**WARNING**

- The unfinalize function is not available at the battery level under (▯).
- During unfinalizing, do not cause impact or vibration to your DVD camcorder.
  This could cause a malfunction.

## 光碟取消終結 ((-RW))

- 此功能僅能在錄製模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 如果已在 VR 模式或視訊模式下終結 DVD-RW 光碟，您可以取消終結光碟以進一步錄製。在取消終結時，電池中應該具有足夠的電量。如果要使用交流電源適配器，請確保插孔連接正確。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
   ➥ 第 21 頁
2. 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
3. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Disc Manage」**。
4. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Disc Unfinalize」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 您僅需使用 DVD 攝錄放影機上的 **FINALIZE** 按鈕來取消終結此光碟。
   - 將顯示光碟資訊。
5. 移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Execute」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 要結束，可使用**搖桿**選擇**「Back」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
6. 將顯示訊息**「Make the disc recordable?」**。向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Yes」**,然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 表明光碟取消終結光碟的訊息將會出現，並且將會取消終結光碟。

**警告**

- 取消最終化功能在電池電量低於（▯）級別時不可用。
- 在取消終結期間，不可撞擊或振動您的 DVD 攝錄放影機。否則可能會使其發生故障。

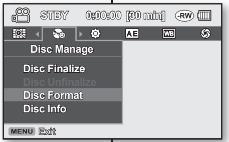
# DVD camcorder mode: disc manage

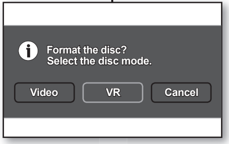
## DISC FORMAT (⊙(-RW +RW))

- This function works only in the Record mode. ➥page 21
- You can format a recorded disc for re-use. By formatting, all existing data will be deleted.

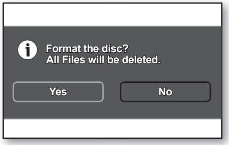
1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power. ➥page 21
2. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
3. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Disc Manage**."
4. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Disc Format**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - When a DVD-RW disc is inserted, move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Video**" or "**VR**" according to how you want to use the disc, then press the **Joystick**.
   - If a DVD+RW disc is inserted, move the **Joystick** to select "**Yes**," then press the **Joystick**.

- The Format function is not available at the battery level under (▬).
- Formatting will delete all the recorded contents on a disc. Be careful not to delete data by mistake.
- Do not turn the power off in the middle of the formatting. The data recorded on a disc may be damaged.
- Be sure to use the AC power adaptor when formatting a disc so that the DVD camcorder does not turn off midway.
- See page 101 for more details on the disc format type.




Format the disc?
Select the disc mode.

<DVD-RW disc>


Format the disc?
All Files will be deleted.

<DVD+RW disc>

# DVD 攝錄放影機模式：光碟管理

## 光碟格式 (⊙(-RW +RW))

- 此功能僅能在錄製模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 您可以格式化錄製過的光碟以重新使用。如果格式化，會刪除所有的現有資料。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。➥ 第 21 頁
2. 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
3. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Disc Manage」**。
4. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Disc Format」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 插入 DVD-RW 光碟時，根據您想使用光碟的方式向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Video**」或「**VR**」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 如果插入 DVD+RW 光碟，移動搖**桿**以選擇「**Yes**」，然後按下**搖桿**。

- 格式化功能在電池電量低於（▬）級別時不可用。
- 格式化將刪除光碟上的所有錄製內容。注意不要錯誤地刪除資料。
- 切勿在格式化期間關閉電源。錄製在光碟上的資料可能會損壞。
- 一定要在格式化光碟時使用交流電源適配器，以便 DVD 攝錄放影機不會出現中途關閉的情況。
- 請參閱第 101 頁以獲得關於光碟格式化類型的詳細資訊。

## DISC INFORMATION ((-RW +RW -R +R DL))

- This function works only in the DVD camcorder record mode. ➥page 21
- It shows you disc information such as the disc name, disc type, disc format, etc.

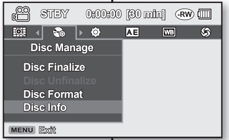
**NOTICE** : Make sure that you insert a disc. ➥page 30

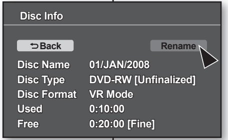
1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power. ➥page 21
2. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
3. Press the **MENU** button, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Disc Manage**."
4. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Disc Info**," then press the **Joystick.**
   - "**Disc Name**," "**Disc Type**," "**Disc Format**," "**Used**" and "**Free**" will be displayed.
   - To return, move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Back**," then press the **Joystick**.

**To rename the disc**

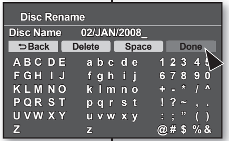
1. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Rename**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - Disc Name screen will appear.
2. Use the **Joystick** to move the cursor to "**Delete**," then press the **Joystick** to delete the existing disc name.
3. Use the **Joystick** to select the desired characters and items, then press the **Joystick**.
4. Use the **Joystick** to select "**Done**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - The "**Disc Name**" will be changed.
   - To return move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Back**," then press the **Joystick**.

- Disc information may appear depending on the disc type.

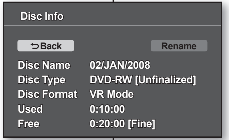

STBY 0:00:00 [30 min] -RW
Disc Manage
Disc Finalize
Disc Unfinalize
Disc Format
Disc Info
MENU Exit


Disc Info
Back
Rename

Disc Name 01/JAN/2008
Disc Type DVD-RW [Unfinalized]
Disc Format VR Mode
Used 0:10:00
Free 0:20:00 [Fine]


Disc Rename
Back
Delete
Space
Done
A B C D E a b c d e 1 2 3 4 5
F G H I J f g h i j 6 7 8 9 0
K L M N O k l m n o + - * / ^
P Q R S T p q r s t ! ? ~ , .
U V W X Y u v w x y : ; " ( )
Z z @ # $ % &

Disc Name 02/JAN/2008_


Disc Info
Back
Rename

Disc Name 02/JAN/2008
Disc Type DVD-RW [Unfinalized]
Disc Format VR Mode
Used 0:10:00
Free 0:20:00 [Fine]

## 光碟資訊 ((-RW +RW -R +R DL))

- 此功能僅在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 它會顯示光碟資訊，如光碟名稱、光碟類型、光碟格式等。

**注意**：確保插入光碟。➥ 第 30 頁

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。➥ 第 21 頁
2. 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
3. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Disc Manage**」。
4. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Disc Info**」，然後按下**搖桿。**
   - "**Disc Name**」、「**Disc Type**」、「**Disc Format**」、「**Used**」和「**Free**」將會顯示。
   - 要返回，可向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Back**」，然後按下**搖桿**。

**要重新命名此光碟**

1. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Rename」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 將會出現光碟片名稱。
2. 使用**搖桿**將游標移至**「Delete」**，然後按下**搖桿**以刪除現有的光碟名稱。
3. 使用**搖桿**選擇所需的字元和項目，然後按下**搖桿**。
4. 使用**搖桿**選擇**「Done」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 「**Disc Name**」將會變更。
   - 要返回，可向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Back**」，然後按下**搖桿**。

- 光碟資訊視類型出現。

# digital camera mode (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

## INSERTING AND EJECTING A MEMORY CARD

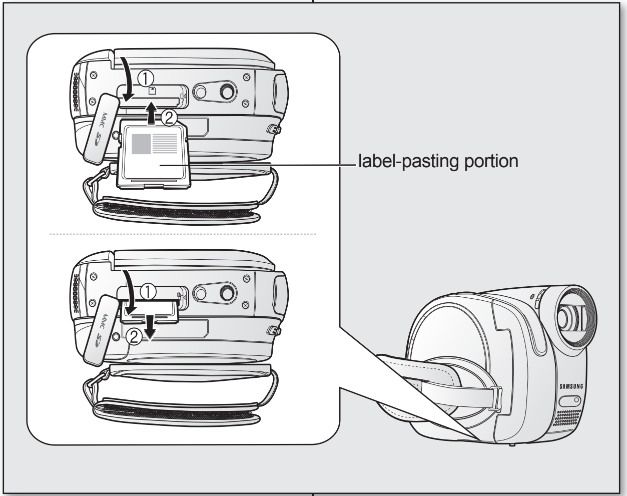
- This DVD camcorder has multi card-slot for access to SD (Secure Digital) and MMC (MultiMediaCard) cards.
  - Some cards are not compatible depending on the memory card manufacturer and memory card type.

**Inserting a memory card**

1. Open the memory card cover.
2. Insert the memory card into the slot until it softly clicks.
   - Make sure that the label-pasting portion is facing up and the camcorder is placed as shown in the figure.
3. Close the memory card cover.

**Ejecting a memory card**

1. Open the memory card cover.
2. Slightly push the memory card inwards to pop it out.
3. Pull the memory card out of the slot and close the memory card cover.



### Selecting a suitable memory card

- **You can use SD and MMC cards.**
  - RS MMC or Mini SD should be inserted by using an Adapter (not supplied).
- **On this DVD camcorder, you can use memory cards of the following capacity: Up to 2GB**
- For movie recording, use a memory card that supports faster write speed (at least 1.25 MB/s).

# 數位相機模式（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

## 插入和彈出記憶卡

・ 此 DVD 攝錄放影機具有多個卡插槽，以存取 SD（安全數位）和 MMC (MultiMediaCard) 卡。
  – 某些卡可能因記憶卡製造商和記憶卡類型而不相容。

**插入記憶卡**

1. 打開記憶卡蓋。
2. 將記憶卡插入插槽中，直到輕輕卡入到位。
   ・ 確保標籤粘貼部分面朝上，並按如圖所示方法放置攝錄放影機。
3. 關閉記憶卡蓋。

**退出記憶卡**

1. 打開記憶卡蓋。
2. 輕輕地將記憶卡向內推使其彈出。
3. 從插槽中拿出記憶卡，然後關閉記憶卡蓋。

### 選擇適當的記憶卡

・ **您可以使用 SD 和 MMC 卡。**
  – RS MMC 或 Mini SD 應通過使用適配器（未提供）來插入。
・ **在此 DVD 攝錄放影機上，您可以使用以下容量的記憶卡：高達 2GB**
・ 對於影片錄製，可使用支援更快寫入速度（至少 1.25 MB/s）的記憶卡。

### SD memory card

- SD memory card supports a mechanical write-protection switch. Setting the switch prevents accidental erasure of files recorded on the card. To enable writing, move the switch up to the direction of terminals. To set write protection, move the switch down.

### MMC(Multi Media Card)

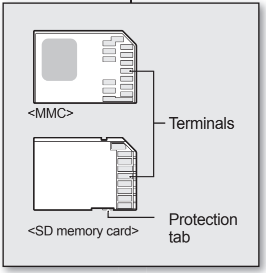
- In the case of MMC, they have no protection tab, so please use the protect function in the menu. ➥page 60

### Common cautions for memory card

- Damaged data may not be recovered. It is recommended you back-up important recordings separately on your PC's hard disk.
- Turning the power off or removing a memory card during operation such as formatting, deleting, recording, and playback may cause the data loss.
- After you modify the name of a file or folder stored in the memory card using your PC, your camcorder may not recognize the modified file.

### Handling a memory card

- It is recommended that you switch off before inserting or removing the memory card to avoid data loss.
- It is not guaranteed that you can use a memory card formatted by other devices. Be sure to format your memory card using this camcorder.
- Memory cards need to be formatted on this camcorder before use.
- If you cannot use a memory card that has been previously used with another device, format it on your DVD camcorder. Note that formatting erases all information on the memory card.
- A memory card has a certain life span. If you cannot record new data, you have to purchase a new memory card.
- Do not bend, drop, or cause a strong impact to your memory card.
- Do not use or store in a place that has a high temperature and humidity or a dusty environment.
- Do not place foreign substances on the memory card terminals. Use a soft dry cloth to clean the terminals if required.
- Do not put any additional labels on the memory card.
- Be careful to keep the memory card out of the reach of children who might swallow it.



<Usable memory cards>

### SD 記憶卡

- SD 記憶卡支援機械寫入保護開關。設定此開關以防止意外刪除儲存在 SD 記憶卡上的資料。若要寫入 將開關朝終端方向移動。若要設定寫入保護，向下移動開關。

### MMC（多媒體卡）

- 對於 MMC，由於沒有保護標籤，因此請使用此選單中的保護功能。➥ 第 60 頁

### 記憶卡的常見注意事項

- 損毀的資料可能無法恢復。建議在電腦硬碟上單獨備份重要資料。
- 在操作期間，如格式化、刪除、錄製及播放，關閉電源或取出記憶卡可能會損毀資料。
- 在您使用電腦修改儲存在記憶卡中的檔案或資料夾名稱後，攝錄放影機可能無法識別所修改的檔案。

### 處理記憶卡

- 插入或取出記憶卡之前，建議您關閉以免資料遺失。
- 不保證您可以使用在其他裝置上格式化的記憶卡。一定要使用此攝錄放影機格式化您的記憶卡。
- 在使用前，需要在此攝錄放影機上格式化記憶卡。
- 如果無法使用已用於其他裝置的記憶卡，可在您的 DVD 攝錄放影機上將其格式化。注意，格式化會刪除記憶卡上的所有資訊。
- 記憶卡具有特定的使用壽命。如果您無法記錄新資料，則必須購買新記憶卡。
- 切勿彎曲、掉落或強力衝撞記憶卡。
- 切勿在高溫和濕度高或充滿灰塵的環境中使用或儲存記憶卡。
- 切勿在記憶卡的終端積聚異物。如有必要，可用柔軟的乾布來清潔終端。
- 切勿將任何其他標籤置於記憶卡上。
- 請勿讓兒童接觸到記憶卡，因為兒童可能會吞食記憶卡。

# digital camera mode (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

**Note on use**

- Samsung is not responsible for data loss due to misuse.
- We recommend using a memory card case to avoid losing data from moving and static electricity.
- After a period of use, the memory card may become warm. This is normal, not a malfunction.
- Photo image files recorded on a memory card by your DVD camcorder conform to the “DCF (Design rule for Camera File system)” universal standard established by the JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association).
- DCF is an integrated image-file format for digital cameras: image files can be used on all digital devices conforming to DCF.

**The DVD camcorder supports SD and MMC memory cards for data storage.**

The data storage speed may differ, according to the manufacturer and production system.

- SLC (single-level cell) system: faster write speed is enabled.
- MLC (multi-level cell) system: only lower write speed is supported.

**For best results, we recommend using a memory card that supports faster write speed.**

Using a lower write speed memory card for recording a movie may cause difficulties with storing the movie on the memory card. You may even lose your movie data during the recording.

In an attempt to preserve any bit of the recorded movie, the DVD camcorder forcibly stores the movie on the memory card and displays a warning: “**Low speed card**.”

# 數位相機模式（ 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ）

**使用注意事項**

- Samsung 將不負責由於誤用所造成的資料遺失。
- 我們建議使用記憶卡盒，以免因為移動和靜電而遺失資料。
- 記憶卡在使用一段時間之後可能會變熱。這是正常現象，並非故障。
- 透過 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製在記憶卡上的相片影像檔案符合 JEITA（ 日本電子資訊技術產業協會 ）建立的「 DCF（ 相機檔案系統設計規則 ）」通用標準。
- DCF 是一種數位相機的整合影像檔案格式：影像檔案可用於符合 DCF 的所有數位裝置。

**DVD 攝錄放影機支援 SD 和 MMC 記憶卡進行資料儲存。**

資料儲存速度可能會因制造廠商和生產系統而異。

- SLC（ 單級元件 ）系統：可支援更快的寫入速度。
- MLC（ 多級元件 ）系統：僅支援較慢的寫入速度。

**為獲取最佳效果，我們建議使用支援更快寫入速度的記憶卡。**

使用較慢寫入速度記憶卡來錄製影片可能會在記憶卡上儲存影片時遇到困難。您還可能會在錄製過程中遺失影片資料。在嘗試保留存錄製影片的任意細節時，DVD 攝錄放影機會強制在記憶卡上儲存影片，並顯示警告：**“Low speed card」。**

## RECORDABLE TIME AND NUMBER OF IMAGES

### Recordable time for movie images

| Storage | Memory card | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Capacity** | **128MB** | **256MB** | **512MB** | **1GB** | **2GB** |
| **Movie image** | Approx. 8 min | Approx. 16 min | Approx. 32 min | Approx. 64 min | Approx. 120 min |

### Recordable number of photo images

| Storage | Memory card | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Capacity / Photo Quality | **128MB** | **256MB** | **512MB** | **1GB** | **2GB** |
| **Super Fine** | Approx. 600 | Approx. 1200 | Approx. 2400 | Approx. 4830 | Approx. 9740 |

Actual formatted capacity may be less as the internal firmware uses a portion of the memory.

- The above figures are measured under Samsung's standard recording test conditions and may differ depending on actual use.
- The DVD camcorder provides only super fine for photo quality.
- The compression rate increases when choosing lower quality settings. The higher the compression rate is, the longer the recording time will be. However, the picture quality will be lower.
- Memory cards of bigger than 2GB in capacity may not work properly.
- Movie image files recorded on other equipment are not playable on this DVD camcorder.

## 可錄製的時間和影像張數

### 可錄製影片影像的時間

| Storage | 記憶卡 | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **容量** | **128MB** | **256MB** | **512MB** | **1GB** | **2GB** |
| **影片影像** | 大約<br>8 分鐘 | 大約<br>16 分鐘 | 大約<br>32 分鐘 | 大約<br>64 分鐘 | 大約<br>120 分鐘 |

### 可錄製的相片影像張數

| Storage | 記憶卡 | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 容量 / 相片品質 | **128MB** | **256MB** | **512MB** | **1GB** | **2GB** |
| **Super Fine** | 大約 600 張 | 大約 1200 張 | 大約 2400 張 | 大約 4830 張 | 大約 9740 張 |

由於內部韌體使用了一部分記憶體，因此實際格式化後的容量可能會小一些。

- 在錄製時，以上數字由 Samsung 在標準錄製測量條件下測得，並且可能因實際使用情況而異。
- DVD 攝錄放影機僅提供超精細的相片品質。
- 在選擇較低的品質設定時，壓縮率會增大 。壓縮率越大，錄製時間將越長。但是，畫面品質將會降低。
- 容量高於 2GB 的記憶卡可能無法正常操作。
- 透過其他設備錄製的影片影像檔案在此 DVD 攝錄放影機上無法播放。

# digital camera mode (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

## RECORDING MOVIE IMAGES

- You should set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD** before recording on a memory card.
- You can record movie images using the remote control. (SC-DX105 only) ➥page 13
- This DVD camcorder provides two **Recording start/stop** buttons. One is on the rear side of the camcorder and the other is on the LCD panel. Select the **Recording start/stop** button that works best for you.

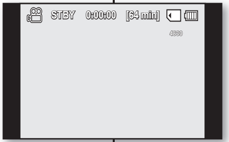
**1.** Turn the DVD camcorder on.
  - Connect a power source to the DVD camcorder. (A battery pack or an AC power adaptor)
  - Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn the DVD camcorder on.
  - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. ➥page 30

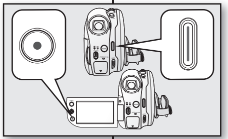
**2.** Check the subject on the LCD screen. (Lens and LCD)
  - Set the **Lens open/close** switch to open (◎). ➥page 10

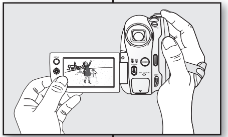
**3.** Press the **Recording start/stop** button.
  - The (●) recording indicator will display, and recording will start.
  - Press the **Recording start/stop** button again to stop recording.

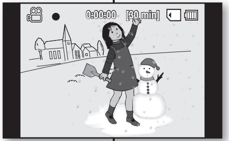
**4.** When recording is finished, turn the DVD camcorder off.

- You can use the zoom function while recording. ➥page 37
- For more details about recording, refer to the page 63.
- The movie images are recorded in the 4:3 aspect ratio on the memory card.
- The recorded movie image size is 720X480.









# 數位相機模式（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

## 錄製影片影像

- 在光碟上進行錄製之前，您應將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD** 。
- 您可以使用遙控器錄製影片影像。（僅適用於 SC-DX105）➥ 第 13 頁
- 此 DVD 攝錄放影機具有兩個**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。其中一個位於攝錄放影機的後部，另一個位於 LCD 面板上。選擇**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕（具有最佳工作效果）。

**1.** 開啟 DVD 攝錄放影機。
  - 將電源連接到 DVD 攝錄放影機。（電池組或交流電源適配器）
  - 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟 DVD 攝錄放影機。
  - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。➥ 第 30 頁

**2.** 檢查 LCD 螢幕上的主體。（鏡頭和 LCD）
  - 將**鏡頭開啟 / 關閉**開關設定為開啟（◎）。➥ 第 10 頁

**3.** 按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。
  - （●）錄製指示器將會顯示，並且錄製將會開始。
  - 再次按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕以停止錄製。

**4.** 在完成錄製時，關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機。

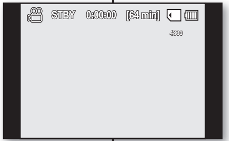
- 您可以在錄製時使用縮放功能。➥ 第 37 頁
- 有關錄製的詳細資訊，請參閱第 63 頁。
- 以 4:3 畫面比例將影片影像錄製在記憶卡上。
- 所錄製影片影像的尺寸為 720X480。

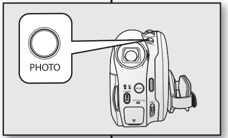
## TAKING PHOTO IMAGES

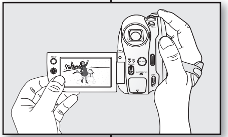
- You should set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD** before recording on a memory card.
- You can take photo images using the remote control. ➥page 13 (SC-DX105 only)

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn the DVD camcorder on.
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. ➥page 30
2. Check the subject on the LCD screen. (Lens and LCD)
   - Set the **Lens open/close** switch to open (◎). ➥page 10
3. Press the **PHOTO** button to take the picture.
   - A shutter sound is heard. The photo image is recorded with the “**Photo capture**” message appeared.
   - While saving the photo image on the memory card, you cannot proceed with the next recording.

- You can use the zoom function while recording. ➥page 37
- The number of photo images that can be stored depends on the quality and size of the image. ➥page 55
- The photo image is taken only in the 4:3 aspect ratio on the memory card.
- Audio will not be recorded with the photo image on the memory card.
- Please check the protection tab setting on your memory card before recording. You may not be able to record when it is locked.
- If focusing is difficult, use the manual focus function. ➥page 70
- Do not operate the **POWER** switch or remove the memory card while accessing the storage media. It may damage the storage media or data.
- Photo images are actually wider than what appears on the LCD screen.
- The recorded photo image size is 800X600.







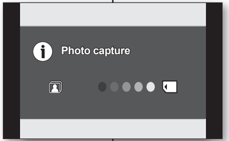


Photo capture

## 拍攝相片影像

- 在光碟上進行錄製之前，您應將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD** 。
- 您可以使用遙控器拍攝相片影像。➥ 第 13 頁( 僅適用於 SC-DX105 )

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟 DVD 攝錄放影機。
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。➥ 第 30 頁
2. 檢查 LCD 螢幕上的主體。( 鏡頭和 LCD )
   - 將**鏡頭開啟 / 關閉**開關設定為開啟（◎）。➥ 第 10 頁
3. 按下 **PHOTO** 按鈕以拍攝相片。
   - 會聽到按下快門的聲音。錄製相片影像時，會出現「**Photo capture**」訊息。
   - 在將相片影像儲存到記憶卡上時，您不可繼續進行下一步錄製操作。

- 您可以在錄製時使用縮放功能。➥ 第 37 頁
- 可儲存的相片影像張數取決於影像的品質和大小。➥ 第 55 頁
- 僅能以 4:3 的畫面比例將相片影像拍攝到記憶卡上。
- 不會透過記憶卡上的相片影像來錄製音訊。
- 請在錄製前檢查設定在您的記憶卡上的保護標籤。您可能無法在鎖定時進行錄製。
- 如果對焦困難，請使用手動對焦功能。➥ 第 70 頁
- 切勿在存取儲存媒體時操作 **POWER** 開關或移除記憶卡。否則，可能會損壞儲存媒體或資料。
- 實際上，相片影像比在 LCD 螢幕上出現的要寬。
- 所錄製相片影像的尺寸為 800X600。

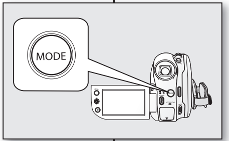
# digital camera mode (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

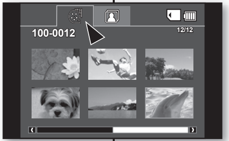
## PLAYING MOVIE IMAGES

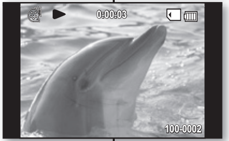
- This function works only in the Play mode. ➥page 21
- You can switch to the Play mode by pressing the **MODE** button.
- You can find a desired movie image quickly using thumbnail index views.
- Use the playback-related buttons on the remote control. ➥page 13 (SC-DX105 only)

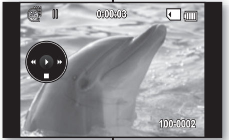
1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power and open the LCD screen.
    - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**.
    - Adjust brightness or color of the LCD screen. ➥page 79
2. Press the **MODE** button to set the play mode.
    - The thumbnail index view appears. The thumbnail highlight is on the latest created or played file.
    - To change the current thumbnail page, move the **Joystick** down to highlight the page bar, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select the page.
3. Use the **Joystick** to select the desired movie image, then press the **Joystick**.
    - The selected file fills the screen and is played automatically.
    - To stop playback, move the **Joystick** down.
    - Use the **Joystick** to enjoy various playback operations.
        - Press the **Joystick** to pause or play back.
        - Move the **Joystick** right or left to skip to the next or previous image.
        - Move the **Joystick** right or left and hold to fast forward or reverse playback(x2).
4. To return to the thumbnail index view, move the **Joystick** down.

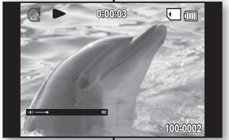
- You can control the volume by using the zoom lever during playback. ➥page 39
- Slow playback is not available in the digital camera mode.
- Press **Display** (□) button to toggle the OSD (On Screen Display) function on and off.
- Depending on the amount of data to be played back, it may take some time for the playback images to appear.
- Movies edited on a PC may not be displayed on this DVD camcorder.
- Movies recorded on another camcorder may not be played on this DVD camcorder.











# 數位相機模式（ 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ）

## 播放影片影像

- 此功能僅能在播放模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 您可以透過按 **MODE** 按鈕切換至播放模式。
- 您可以使用縮略索引視圖快速查找所需的影片影像。
- 使用遙控器上的播放相關按鈕。➥ 第 13 頁（ 僅適用於 SC-DX105 ）

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源和打開 LCD 螢幕。
    - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。
    - 調整 LCD 螢幕的亮度或色彩。➥ 第 79 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
    - 會顯示縮略索引視圖。最近建立或播放的檔案上會反白顯示縮圖。
    - 要變更目前的縮圖頁面，可向下移動**搖桿**以反白顯示頁面列，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇頁面。
3. 使用**搖桿**選擇所需的影片影像，然後按下**搖桿**。
    - 選定檔案顯示在螢幕上並自動播放。
    - 要停止播放，可向下移動**搖桿**。
    - 使用**搖桿**以進行各種播放操作。
        - 按下**搖桿**以暫停或播放。
        - 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以略過下一幅或上一幅影像。
        - 向右或向左移動搖**桿**以前進或倒退播放（x2）。
4. 要返回縮略索引視圖，可向下移動**搖桿**。

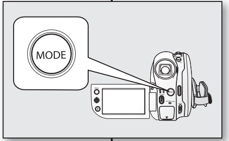
- 播放時，您可以透過使用縮放**搖桿**控制音量。➥ 第 39 頁
- 在數位相機模式下，不可使用慢速播放。
- 按下**顯示**（□）按鈕以打開和關閉 OSD（ 螢幕顯示 ）功能。
- 因播放的資料數量不同，可能稍後才會出現播放影像。
- 電腦上編輯的影片可能在此 DVD 攝錄放影機上無法顯示。
- 在另一台攝錄放影機上錄製的影片在此 DVD 攝錄放影機上可能無法播放。

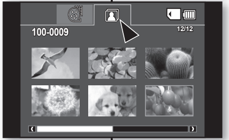
## VIEWING PHOTO IMAGES

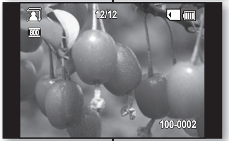
- This function works only in the Play mode. ➥page 21
- You can play back and view photo images recorded on the memory card.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power and open the LCD screen.
    - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. ➥page 30
    - Adjust brightness or color of the LCD screen. ➥page 79
2. Press the **MODE** button. Use the **Joystick** to highlight the photo ( 🖼 ) tab.
    - The thumbnail index view of photo images appears.
    - To change the current thumbnail page, move the **Joystick** down to highlight the page bar, then move the **Joystick** right or left to select the page.
3. Use the **Joystick** to select the desired photo image, then press the **Joystick**.
    - To view the previous image, move the **Joystick** left.
    - To view the next image, move the **Joystick** right.
    - To search for an image quickly, move the **Joystick** right or left and hold. Actually the image number is changed during search with images not changed.
4. To return to the thumbnail index view, move the **Joystick** down.

- All the icons disappear or appear when you press **Display** (|☐|) button on the camcorder.
- Loading time may vary depending on the image size.
- Any large-sized image taken with another device will be displayed as a thumbnail image.

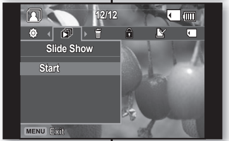


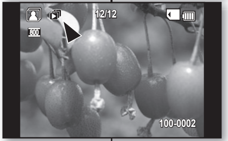




### Set the slide show function for continuous display.

1. Press the **MENU** button in the single image display mode.
2. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Slide Show**" → "**Start**" then press the **Joystick**.
    - The (⧉) indicator is displayed. The slide show will start from the current image.
    - All images will be played back consecutively for 2~3 seconds each.
    - To stop the slide show, move the **Joystick** down or press the **MENU** button.





## 檢視相片影像

- 此功能僅能在播放模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 您可以播放和檢視錄製在記憶卡上的相片影像。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源和打開 LCD 螢幕。
    - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。➥ 第 30 頁
    - 調整 LCD 螢幕的亮度或色彩。➥ 第 79 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕。使用**搖桿**以反白顯示相片（ 🖼 ）標籤。
    - 會顯示相片影像的縮略索引視圖。
    - 要變更目前的縮圖頁面，可向下移動**搖桿**以反白顯示頁面列，然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇頁面。
3. 使用**搖桿**選擇所需的相片影像，然後按下**搖桿**。
    - 要檢視上一個影像，可向左移動**搖桿**。
    - 要檢視下一個影像，可向右移動**搖桿**。
    - 要快速搜尋影像，可向右或向左移動並按住**搖桿**。實際上，在搜尋期間，影像數目會變更，而影像不變。
4. 要返回縮略索引視圖，可向下移動**搖桿**。

- 按攝錄放影機上的**顯示**（|☐|）按鈕時，所有圖示都會消失或顯示。
- 載入時間將視影像大小而有所不同。
- 任何以其他裝置拍攝的大型影像將顯示為縮圖影像。

### 設定連續放映以供連續顯示。

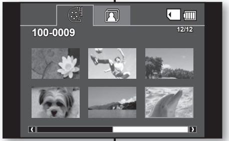
1. 在單一影像顯示模式下按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
2. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇**「Slide Show」** → **「Start」**，然後按下**搖桿**。
    - （⧉）指示器會顯示。連續放映將會從目前影像開始。
    - 所有影像將連續各播放 2~3 秒鐘。
    - 要停止連續放映，可向下移動**搖桿**或按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

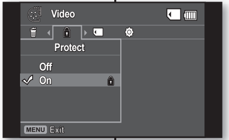
# digital camera mode (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

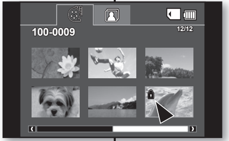
## PROTECTION FROM ACCIDENTAL ERASURE

- This function works only in the Play mode. ➥page 21
- You can protect important images from accidental erasure.
- If you execute formatting, all files including protected files will be erased.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power.
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. ➥page 30
2. Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode.
   - The thumbnail index view appears.
   - To see the thumbnail index view of photo images, use the **Joystick** to select the photo (🖼) tab.
3. Use the **Joystick** to select the image to protect, press the **MENU** button.
4. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Protect**."
5. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select the desired option ("**Off**" or "**On**"), then press the **Joystick**.
   - After completion, the selected images will be protected.
   - The (🔒) indicator appears on the selected image.







- This function operates identically in the full image display mode (single image displayed on the screen). (Photo images only)
- Protected images will show the (🔒) indicator when they are displayed.
- If the write-protection tab on the memory card is set to lock, you cannot set image protection. ➥page 53

# 數位相機模式（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

## 保護以防意外刪除

- 此功能僅可在播放模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 您可以保護重要的影像以防止意外刪除。
- 如果您執行格式化，將會刪除所有檔案，包括受保護的檔案。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。➥ 第 30 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
   - 會顯示縮略索引視圖。
   - 要查看相片影像的縮略索引視圖，可使用**搖桿**選擇相片（🖼）標籤。
3. 使用**搖桿**選擇要保護的影像，然後按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
4. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Protect**」。
5. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇所需選項（「**Off**」或「**On**」），然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 完成後，將會保護所選的影像。
   - （🔒）指示器會出現在所選的影像上。

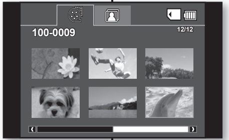
- 在全屏影像顯示模式（顯示在螢幕上的單一影像）下，此功能使用相同的操作方式。（僅適用於相片影像）
- 在顯示受保護的影像時，它將會顯示（🔒）指示器。
- 如果將記憶卡上的寫入保護標簽設定為鎖定，您就不能設定影像保護。➥ 第 53 頁

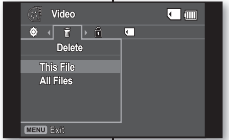
## DELETING IMAGES

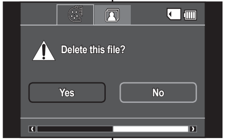
- This function works only in the Play mode.
- You can delete undesired movie images recorded on the memory card.
- If you want to delete the protected images, you must first release the image protection.
- An image that has been deleted cannot be recovered.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power.
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. ➥page 30
2. Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode.
   - The thumbnail index view of movie images appears.
   - To see the thumbnail index view of photo images, use the **Joystick** to select the photo (🖼) tab.
3. Use the **Joystick** to select the image to delete, then press the **MENU** button.
4. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Delete.**"
5. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select the desired option ("**This File**" or "**All Files**"), then press the **Joystick**.
   - "**This File**": Deletes the selected file.
   - "**All Files**": Deletes all images.
6. The message according to the selected option will appear. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Yes**," the press the **Joystick**.
   - After completion, the selected images will be deleted.

- This function operates identically in the full image display mode (single image displayed on the screen). (Photo images only)
- To protect important images from accidental deletion, activate the image protection. ➥page 60
- You cannot delete a protected image. You must release the protect function to delete the image. ➥ page 60






Delete this file?

## 刪除影像

- 此功能僅在播放模式中操作。
- 您可以刪除在記憶卡上錄製的不需要的影片影像。
- 如果您想刪除受保護的影像，必須首先解除影像保護。
- 所刪除的影像將無法恢復。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。➥ 第 30 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
   - 會顯示影片影像的縮略索引視圖。
   - 要查看相片影像的縮略索引視圖，可使用**搖桿**選擇相片（🖼）標籤。
3. 使用**搖桿**選擇要刪除的影像，然後按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
4. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Delete**」。
5. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇所需的選項（「**This File**」或「**All Files**」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 「**This File**」: 刪除所選的檔案。
   - 「**All Files**」: 刪除所有影像。
6. 訊息將視所選項目而出現。向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Yes**」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 完成後，將會刪除所選的影像。

- 在全屏影像顯示模式（顯示在螢幕上的單一影像）下，此功能會使用相同的操作方式。（僅適用於相片影像）
- 要防止重要的影像被意外刪除，要啟動影像保護。➥ 第 60 頁
- 您無法刪除受保護的影像。您必須解除保護功能才能刪除影像。➥ 第 60 頁

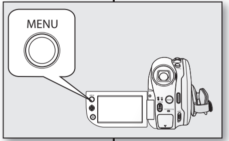
# using the menu items

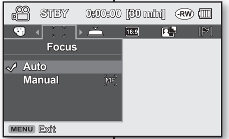
## HANDLING MENUS

✪ Follow the instruction below to use each of the menu items listed on this page.
For example: setting the Focus

### Using the **MENU** button

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power.
    - Set the appropriate storage media. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Focus**."
4. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select the desired option, then press the **Joystick**.
    - Move the **Joystick** right or left to adjust focus manually.
5. To exit, press the **MENU** button.

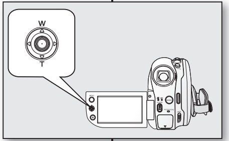


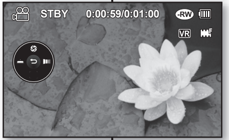


### Using the **Joystick**

The guide provides easier access to frequently used menus without using the **MENU** button.

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power.
2. Press the **Joystick** to display the guide
3. Move the **Joystick** down to select focus([ ]).
4. Move the **Joystick** down to select the desired option.
    - Moving the **Joystick** down toggles between "**Auto Focus**" and "**Manual Focus.**"
5. To exit, press the **Joystick** repeatedly until the guide disappears.





- Accessible items in menu vary depending on the operation mode.

# 使用選單項目

## 操作選單

✪ 請按照以下指示使用在此頁面上所列出的各選單項目。
例如：設定焦距

### 使用 **MENU** 按鈕

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
    - 選擇適當的儲存媒體。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
2. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
3. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Focus** 」。
4. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇所需選項，然後按下**搖桿**。
    - 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以手動調整對焦。
5. 若要結束，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

### 使用**搖桿**

此指南提供在不使用 **MENU** 按鈕的情況下，更方便存取經常使用的選單的方法。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
2. 按下**搖桿**以顯示此指南。
3. 向下移動**搖桿**以選擇對焦（[ ]）。
4. 向下移動**搖桿**以選擇所需的選項。
    - 向下移動**搖桿**可在「 **Auto Focus** 」和「**Manual Focus**」之間進行切換。
5. 若要結束，可重複按下**搖桿**直到此指南消失為止。

- 選單中可存取的項目因操作模式而有所不同。

## MENU ITEMS

- Accessible items in menu vary depending on the operating mode.
- For operation details, see the corresponding page.

### Recording menu items

| Operating mode | DISC | CARD (SC-DX103/DX105 only) | Default value | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Scene Mode(AE) | ● | X | Auto | 65 |
| White Balance | ● | ● | Auto | 66 |
| Exposure | ● | ● | Auto | 67 |
| Anti-Shake(DIS) | ● | X | Off | 68 |
| Digital Effect | ● | X | Off | 69 |
| Focus | ● | ● | Auto | 70 |
| Shutter | ● | X | Auto | 71 |
| 16:9 Wide | ● | X | On | 72 |
| Quality | ● | X | Fine | 72 |
| Wind Cut | ● | X | Off | 73 |
| Back Light | ● | ● | Off | 73 |
| C. Nite | ● | X | Off | 74 |
| Light (SC-DX105 only) | ● | X | Off | 74 |
| Fader | ● | X | Off | 75 |
| Guideline | ● | ● | Off | 75 |
| Digital Zoom | ● | X | Off | 76 |
| File No. | X | ● | Series | 77 |
| Disc Manage | ● | X | - | 47~51 |

● : possible, X : not possible

- Some items will not appear depending on the storage media type. (SC-DX103/DX105 only)
- There are some functions you cannot activate simultaneously in the menu. You cannot select the gray menu items.
  Refer to the troubleshooting for examples of the inoperable combinations of functions and menu items. ➥page 111

## 選單項目

- 選單中可存取的項目因操作模式而有所不同。
- 有關操作的詳細資訊，請參閱相應的頁面。

### 錄製選單項目

| 操作模式 | 光碟片 | CARD（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105） | 預設值 | 頁碼 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Scene Mode(AE) | ● | X | Auto | 65 |
| White Balance | ● | ● | Auto | 66 |
| Exposure | ● | ● | Auto | 67 |
| Anti-Shake(DIS) | ● | X | Off | 68 |
| Digital Effect | ● | X | Off | 69 |
| Focus | ● | ● | Auto | 70 |
| Shutter | ● | X | Auto | 71 |
| 16:9 Wide | ● | X | On | 72 |
| Quality | ● | X | Fine | 72 |
| Wind Cut | ● | X | Off | 73 |
| Back Light | ● | ● | Off | 73 |
| C. Nite | ● | X | Off | 74 |
| Light（僅適用於 SC-DX105） | ● | X | Off | 74 |
| Fader | ● | X | Off | 75 |
| Guideline | ● | ● | Off | 75 |
| Digital Zoom | ● | X | Off | 76 |
| File No. | X | ● | Series | 77 |
| Disc Manage | ● | X | - | 47~51 |

● : 可能，X : 不可能

- 一些項目因儲存媒體不同而不會顯示。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）
- 有些功能無法同時在選單中啟動。您無法選擇呈灰色顯示的選單項目。
  參閱疑難排解以了解不能結合使用的功能和選單項目的範例。➥ 第 111 頁

# using the menu items

## Playback menu items

| Operating mode | | DISC | CARD (SC-DX103/DX105 only) | | Default value | Page |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Video | Photo | | |
| Delete | | ● | ● | ● | - | 40,61 |
| Edit | Partial Delete | ● | X | X | - | 41,46 |
| Protect | | X | ● | ● | - | 60 |
| Card Manage | | X | ● | ● | - | 78 |
| Print Mark(DPOF) | | X | X | ● | - | 83 |
| Slide Show (in the single image display) | | X | X | ● | - | 59 |

● : possible, X : not possible

## Setting menu items

| Operating mode | | Default value | Page |
|---|---|---|---|
| Date/Time Set | | JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM | 78 |
| Date/Time | | Off | 79 |
| LCD Brightness | | 18 | 79 |
| LCD Color | | 18 | 79 |
| Beep Sound | | On | 80 |
| Shutter Sound (SC-DX103/DX105 only) | | On | 80 |
| Auto Power Off | | 6 Min | 80 |
| Remote (SC-DX105 only) | | On | 81 |
| TV Display | | On | 81 |
| USB Connect (SC-DX103/DX105 only) | DISC | PC Cam | 81 |
| | CARD | Mass Storage | |
| Default Set | | - | 81 |
| Menu Color | | Midnight Blue | 81 |
| Transparency | | 20% | 82 |
| Language | | - | 82 |
| Demo | | On | 82 |

# 使用選單項目

## 播放選單項目

| 操作模式 | | 光碟片 | CARD（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105） | | 預設值 | 頁碼 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 視訊 | 相片 | | |
| Delete | | ● | ● | ● | - | 40,61 |
| Edit | Partial Delete | ● | X | X | - | 41,46 |
| Protect | | X | ● | ● | - | 60 |
| Card Manage | | X | ● | ● | - | 78 |
| Print Mark(DPOF) | | X | X | ● | - | 83 |
| Slide Show( 在單一影像顯示中 ) | | X | X | ● | - | 59 |

● : 可能 , X : 不可能

## 設定選單項目

| 操作模式 | | 預設值 | 頁碼 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Date/Time Set | | JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM | 78 |
| Date/Time | | Off | 79 |
| LCD Brightness | | 18 | 79 |
| LCD Color | | 18 | 79 |
| Beep Sound | | On | 80 |
| Shutter Sound（ 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ） | | On | 80 |
| Auto Power Off | | 6 Min | 80 |
| Remote Remote（ 僅適用於 SC-DX105 ） | | On | 81 |
| TV Display | | On | 81 |
| USB Connect ( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105) | 光碟片 | PC Cam | 81 |
| | CARD | Mass Storage | |
| Default Set | | - | 81 |
| Menu Color | | Midnight Blue | 81 |
| Transparency | | 20% | 82 |
| Language | | - | 82 |
| Demo | | On | 82 |

## RECORDING MENU ITEMS

You can set up the menu items for recording.

### Scene Mode(AE)

This DVD camcorder automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture according to the subject brightness for optimum recording: You can also specify one of six modes depending on conditions, recording environment or purpose of filming.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | - Auto balance between the subject and the background.<br>- To be used in normal conditions.<br>- The shutter speed is automatically adjusted depending on the scene. | **None** |
| **Sports** | - For recording people or objects moving quickly. If the Sports mode is used under a fluorescent light, the image may flicker. In this case, use the Auto mode for recording. | |
| **Portrait** | - Creates a shallow depth of field so that the person or subject appears against a softened background.<br>- The portrait mode is most effective when used outdoors. | |
| **Spotlight** | - Prevents overexposure of subject's face, etc., when strong light strikes the subject, as in a wedding or on stage. | |
| **Beach/ Snow** | - Prevents underexposure of subject's face, etc., in a place where reflection of light is intense, such as at the beach in midsummer or on a ski slope. | |
| **High Speed** | - Reduces blurring when recording rapidly moving subjects such as in golf or tennis. | |

- You can check the selected "**Scene Mode(AE)**" mode on the on-screen information display. However, nothing will appear in "**Auto**" mode.
- This function will be set to "**Auto**" in the EASY.Q mode.
- This function can be set in the DVD camcorder record mode only.

## 錄製選單項目

您可以設定錄製的選單項目。

### Scene Mode(AE)

根據最佳錄製的主體亮度，此 DVD 攝錄放影機會自動設定快門速度和透鏡光圈：您還可以根據條件、錄製環境或拍攝目的指定六種模式之一。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | – 自動平衡主體和背景。<br>– 在正常情況下使用。<br>– 根據場景自動調整快門速度。 | **無** |
| **Sports** | – 用於錄製快速移動的人物或物體。如果在螢光燈下使用「 體育 」模式，則影像可能會閃爍。在此情況下，使用「 自動 」模式進行錄製。 | |
| **Portrait** | – 建立場景的淺深度以便人物或主體處於柔和的背景中。<br>– 人像模式在戶外使用時最有效。 | |
| **Spotlight** | – 防止主體面部曝光過度等（ 在婚禮或舞台上強光照射主體時 ）。 | |
| **Beach/ Snow** | – 防止主體面部等在強烈反光下曝光面部等在強烈反光下曝光，如仲夏的海邊或滑雪坡上。 | |
| **High Speed** | – 在快速錄製移動的主體（ 如高爾夫或網球球場 ）時減少模糊。 | |

- 您可以在螢幕資訊顯示上檢查所選的「 **Scene Mode(AE)** 」。但是，在「 **Auto** 」模式中將無任何顯示。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「 **Auto** 」。
- 此功能只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。

# using the menu items

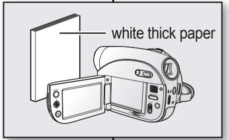
## White Balance

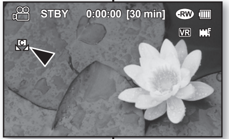
This DVD camcorder automatically adjusts the color of subject. Change the white balance setting depending on the recording conditions.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | This option is generally used to control the white balance automatically. | **None** |
| **Daylight** | This controls the white balance according to the outdoor ambience, especially for close up and when the subject is of one dominant color. | ☼ |
| **Cloudy** | This option is used when you make a recording in cloudy weather. | ☁ |
| **Fluorescent** | This option is used when you make a recording under white fluorescent lights. | ⁜ |
| **Tungsten** | This option is for when there is less than 3200K of tungsten light being used. | 💡 |
| **Custom WB** | You can manually adjust white balance to match the light source or situation. | C |

### Setting white balance manually

1. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Custom WB**," then press the **Joystick**.
   The "**Set White Balance**" indicator is displayed.
2. Frame a white object such as a piece of white paper so that it fills the screen.
   Use an object that is not transparent.
   - If the object that fills the screen is not focused, correct the focus using "**Manual Focus**." ➥page 70
   - Press the **MENU** button to cancel.
3. Press the **Joystick**.
   The white balance setting will be applied and ( C ) indicator is displayed.
   To exit, press the **MENU** button.





# 使用選單項目

## White Balance

此 DVD 攝錄放影機會自動調整主體的色彩。變更白平衡設定取決於錄製條件。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | 此選項一般用來自動控制白平衡。 | **無** |
| **Daylight** | 這將根據戶外環境控制白平衡，尤其針對特寫和在主體顏色突出時。 | ☼ |
| **Cloudy** | 當您在陰天進行錄製時使用此選項。 | ☁ |
| **Fluorescent** | 當您在白色螢光燈下進行錄製時使用此選項。 | ⁜ |
| **Tungsten** | 在小於 3200K 的鎢絲燈環境下使用此選項。 | 💡 |
| **Custom WB** | 您可以手動調整白平衡以適應光源或環境情況。 | C |

### 手動設定白平衡

1. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Custom WB**, 」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   會顯示「 **Set White Balance** 」指示燈。
2. 將白色物體（如一張白紙）框住以便它填滿螢幕。
   使用不透明的物體。
   - 如果沒有對焦填充螢幕的物體，請使用「 **Manual Focus** 」修正對焦。➥ 第 70 頁
   - 按下 **MENU** 按鈕以取消。
3. 按下**搖桿**。
   將會套用白平衡設定和顯示（ C ）指示器。
   若要結束，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

- A subject can be shot under various types of lighting conditions indoors (natural, fluorescent, candlelight, etc.). Because the color temperature is different depending on the light source, the subject tint will differ depending on the white balance settings. Use this function for a more natural result.
- It is recommended that you specify "**Digital Zoom: Off**" (➥page 76) before setting white balance.
- Do not use a colored object when setting white balance: The appropriate tint cannot be set.
- This function will be set to "**Auto**" in the EASY.Q mode.
- Reset the white balance if lighting conditions change.
- During normal outdoor recording, setting to auto may provide better results.

## Exposure

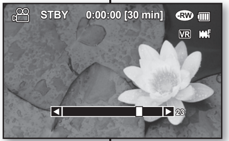
The DVD camcorder usually adjusts the exposure automatically. You can also manually adjust the exposure depending on the recording conditions.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | This option automatically adjusts image brightness according to the environmental light conditions. | **None** |
| **Manual** | You can adjust the brightness of an image manually. Adjust the brightness when the subject is too bright or too dark. | Ⓜ XX |

### Setting the exposure manually:

When manually setting the exposure, the default setting appears as the value is automatically adjusted according to the environmental light conditions.

1. Move the **Joystick** right or left to adjust the exposure while viewing the image on the LCD screen.
   - Exposure value can be set between "**0**" and "**29**."
2. Press the **Joystick**.
   - The manual exposure setting will be applied and (Ⓜ XX) indicator is displayed.
3. To exit, press the **Joystick** repeatedly until the OK guide disappears.



- 在室內的各種光線條件（自然光線、螢光燈、燭光等）下都可拍攝主體。由於色彩溫度因光源而異，因此主體色調會因白平衡設定而有所不同。使用此功能獲取更自然的效果。
- 在設定白平衡之前，建議指定「**Digital Zoom:Off**」(➥第 76 頁)
- 在設定白平衡時切勿使用彩色物體：無法設定適當的色調。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「**Auto**」。
- 在燈光條件變更時重設白平衡。
- 在進行普通戶外錄製期間，設定為自動將可提供更佳效果。

## Exposure

DVD 攝錄放影機通常會自動調整曝光。根據錄製條件您還可手動調整曝光。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | 根據環境光照條件，此選項會自動調整影像亮度。 | **無** |
| **Manual** | 您可以手動調整影像亮度。在主體太亮或太暗時調整亮度。 | Ⓜ XX |

### 手動設定曝光：

在手動設定曝光時，在根據環境光照條件自動調整值時會出現預設值。

1. 在檢視 LCD 螢幕上的影像時，向右或向左移動**搖桿**以調整曝光度。
   - 曝光值可設定在「**0**」和「**29.**」之間。
2. 按下**搖桿**。
   - 將會套用手動曝光設定和顯示（Ⓜ XX）指示器。
3. 若要結束，可重複按下**搖桿**直到 OK 導向器消失。

# using the menu items

**Manual exposure is recommended in situations listed below:**

- When shooting using reverse lighting or when the background is too bright.
- When shooting on a reflective natural background such as at the beach or when skiing.
- When the background is overly dark or the subject is bright.

- If you manually change the exposure value when "**Scene Mode(AE)**" function is selected, manual changes are applied first.
- This function will be set to "**Auto**" in the EASY.Q mode.

## Anti-Shake(DIS)

When you use zoom to record a magnified subject image, it will correct fuzziness in the recorded image.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| **On** | Compensates for unstable images caused by camcorder-shake, particularly at high magnification. | ✋ |

- EASY Q mode automatically sets the "**Anti-Shake(DIS)**" to "**On**."
- When "**Anti-Shake(DIS): On**" is set, there will be a slight difference between the actual movement and the movement on screen.
- Gross camcorder-shake may not be entirely corrected even if "**Anti-Shake(DIS): On**" is set.
  Firmly hold the DVD camcorder with both hands.
- It is recommended that you specify "**Anti-Shake(DIS): Off**" when using the DVD camcorder on a desk or tripod (not supplied).
- When you record pictures with 34x or more magnification and the "**Anti-Shake(DIS)**" is set to "**On**" in dark locations, after-images may stand out. In this case, we recommend using a tripod (not supplied) and turning the "**Anti-Shake(DIS)**" to "**Off**."
- This function can be set in the DVD camcorder record mode only.

# 使用選單項目

**在以下所列情況下建議使用手動曝光：**

- 在使用回光拍攝或背景太暗時。
- 在反射的自然背景如沙灘上拍攝或在滑雪時。
- 在背景過暗或主體太亮時。

- 如果在選擇「**Scene Mode(AE)**」功能時手動變更曝光值，則會首先套用手動變更。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「**Auto**」。

## Anti-Shake(DIS)

當您使用縮放錄製放大的影像時，它將會在錄製的影像中修正模糊度。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| **On** | 對攝錄放影機抖動（尤其是在放大率高時）造成的不穩定影像進行補償。 | ✋ |

- 簡易拍攝模式會自動將「**Anti-Shake(DIS)**」設定為「**On.**」
- 在設定「**Anti-Shake(DIS):On**」時，實際運動和螢幕上的運動可能會略有不同。
- 即使已設定「**Anti-Shake(DIS):On**」，也不能徹底更正大幅度攝錄放影機抖動。
  請用雙手握緊 DVD 攝錄放影機。
- 在桌面或三腳架（未提供）上使用 DVD 攝錄放影機時，建議指定「**Anti-Shake(DIS):Off**」。
- 在使用 34x 或更高放大倍數錄製畫面及在黑暗位置將「**Anti-Shake(DIS)**」設定為「**On**」時 影像之後可能會突出。在此情況下，我們建議使用三腳架（未提供），並將「**Anti-Shake(DIS)**」設定為「**Off.**」
- 此功能只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。

## Digital Effect

The digital effect enables you to give a creative look to your recording. Select the appropriate digital effect for the type of picture that you wish to record and the effect you wish to create. There are 10 different digital effect options.

| | Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| 1 | **Black & White** | This mode changes the images to black and white. | BW |
| 2 | **Sepia** | This mode gives the images a reddish brown pigment. | S |
| 3 | **Negative** | This mode reverses the colors, creating a negative image. | N |
| 4 | **Art** | This mode gives the images a coarse effect. | ✎ |
| 5 | **Emboss1** | This mode creates a 3D effect (embossing). | ○ |
| 6 | **Emboss2** | This mode creates a 3D effect (embossing) on the surrounding area of an image. | ● |
| 7 | **Mosaic** | This mode gives the images a mosaic effect. | ▦ |
| 8 | **Mirror** | This mode cuts the picture in half, using a mirror effect. | ◫ |
| 9 | **Pastel1** | This mode applies a pale pastel drawing effect to an image. | ✎ |
| 10 | **Pastel2** | This mode applies a pale pastel drawing effect to the surrounding area of an image. | ✎ |

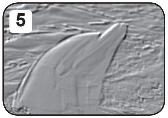
- “**Mirror**” mode is not available in the 16:9 Wide mode. Release 16:9 wide first to set “**Mirror**.”
- This function will be set to “**Off**” while EASY.Q is in use.
- The **“Emboss2,” “Mosaic,” “Mirror,” “Pastel1”** and **“Pastel2”** modes are not available while “**Anti-Shake (DIS)**” or “**C. Nite**” is in use.
- Digital Zoom is not available in the **“Emboss2,” “Mosaic,” “Mirror,” “Pastel1”** or **“Pastel2”** mode.
- This function can be set in the DVD camcorder record mode only.

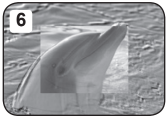
1

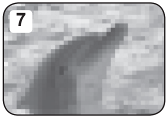
2

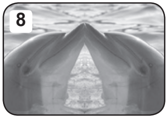
3

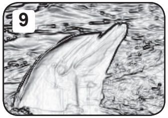
4

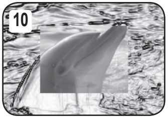

5


6


7


8


9


10

---

## Digital Effect

數位效果讓您可以在錄製中加入創意元素。為您要錄製的圖片類型以及您要建立的效果選擇適當的數位效果。共有 10 種不同的數位效果選項。

| | 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| 1 | **Black & White** | 此模式將影像變更為黑白。 | BW |
| 2 | **Sepia** | 此模式可賦予影像紅褐色的色調。 | S |
| 3 | **Negative** | 此模式將顏色倒置，建立一張底片影像。 | N |
| 4 | **Art** | 此模式可賦予影像粗糙效果。 | ✎ |
| 5 | **Emboss1** | 此模式將建立 3D 效果（浮雕）。 | ○ |
| 6 | **Emboss2** | 此模式在影像周圍區域建立 3D 效果（浮雕）。 | ● |
| 7 | **Mosaic** | 此模式可賦予影像馬賽克效果。 | ▦ |
| 8 | **Mirror** | 此模式使用鏡像效果，將圖片剪切一半。 | ◫ |
| 9 | **Pastel1** | 此模式將淡淡的蠟筆繪畫效果套用到影像上。 | ✎ |
| 10 | **Pastel2** | 此模式將淡淡的蠟筆繪畫效果套用到影像的周圍區域上。 | ✎ |

- **「Mirror」**模式在 16:9 寬螢幕模式中不可用。首先解除 16:9 寬螢幕以設定**「Mirror」**。
- 在使用 EASY.Q 時，此功能將被設定為**「Off」**。
- **「Emboss2」、「Mosaic」、「Mirror」、「Pastel1」**和**「Pastel2」**模式不可用（在使用**「Anti-Shake (DIS)」**或**「C. Nite」**時）。
- 數位縮放不可在**「Emboss2」、「Mosaic」、「Mirror」、「Pastel1」**或**「Pastel2」**模式中使用。
- 此功能只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。

# using the menu items

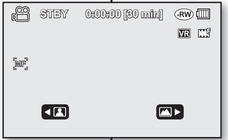
## Focus

The DVD camcorder usually focusses on a subject automatically (auto focus). When the DVD camcorder is turned on, auto focus will always be set. You can also manually focus a subject depending on the recording conditions.

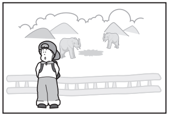
| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | In most situations, it is better to use the automatic focus feature, as it enables you to concentrate on the creative side of your recording. | **None** |
| **Manual** | Manual focusing may be necessary under certain conditions that make automatic focusing difficult or unreliable. | MF |

**Focusing manually during recording**

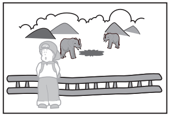
This DVD camcorder automatically focusses a subject from close-up to infinity.
However, the correct focus may not be obtained depending on the recording condition. In this case, use the manual focus mode.



1. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Manual**," then press the **Joystick**.
   - The manual focus adjustment indicators appear.
2. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select the desired indicator to adjust focus, then press the **Joystick**.
   **Focusing on a farther subject**
   To focus on a farther subject, move the **Joystick** to the indicator(⛰▶).
   **Focusing on a nearer subject**
   To focus on a nearer subject, move the **Joystick** to the indicator(◀👤).
   - The nearer or farther icon (👤/⛰) appears between the indicators when focus adjustment reaches the end. The adjusted value is applied right after moving the **Joystick** right or left to adjust the focus.
   - The manual focus setting will be applied and (MF) indicator is displayed.
3. To exit, press the **Joystick** repeatedly until the guide disappears.



<Nearer subject>



<Farther subject>

**In the following situations, you may obtain better results by adjusting the focus manually.**

- A picture containing several objects, some close to the DVD camcorder, others farther away.
- A person enveloped in fog or surrounded by snow.
- Very shiny or glossy surfaces like a car.
- People or objects moving constantly or quickly like an athlete or a crowd.

# 使用選單項目

## Focus

DVD 攝錄放影機通常針對自動主體對焦 ( 自動對焦 )。在開啟 DVD 攝錄放影機時，總會設定自動對焦。您還可根據錄製條件來手動對焦主體。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | 在大多數情況下，使用自動對焦功能更為恰當，因為它允許您專注於創意錄製。 | **無** |
| **Manual** | 在特定條件下無法進行自動對焦和 / 或自動對焦變得不可靠時，可能就需要使用手動對焦。 | MF |

**錄製時手動對焦**

此 DVD 攝錄放影機可從特寫到無限遠自動對焦主體。
但是，根據錄製條件可能無法獲得正確對焦。在此情況下，使用手動對焦模式。

1. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Manual** 」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 手動對焦調整指示器會出現。
2. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇所需指示器進行調整對焦，然後按下搖**桿**。
   **對焦較遠的主體**
   若要對焦較遠的主體，可將**搖桿**移至指示器 (⛰▶) 。
   **對焦較近的主體**
   若要對焦較近的主體，可將**搖桿**移至指示器 (◀👤) 。
   - 在完成對焦調整時，較近或較遠的圖示（👤/⛰）會出現在指示器之間。在向右或向左移動**搖桿**以調整對焦後，使用所調整的值。
   - 將會套用手動對焦設定和顯示（MF）指示器。
3. 若要結束，可重複按下**搖桿**直到此指南消失為止。

**在以下情況中，透過手動調整焦距將可讓您獲得更佳效果。**

- 圖片包含數個物體，離 DVD 攝錄放影機的距離各不相同。
- 被霧包圍或雪景中的人物。
- 非常閃亮的表面，如汽車。
- 持續或快速移動的人物或物體，如運動員或人群。

- "**Focus**" function will alternate between manual focus and auto focus. With auto focus, no indication will appear on the screen.
- If you are inexperienced in the use of DVD camcorders, we recommend that you use auto focus.
- This function will be set to "**Auto**" in the EASY.Q mode.

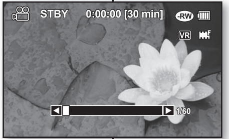
## Shutter

The DVD camcorder automatically sets the shutter speed depending on the subject brightness. You can also manually adjust the shutter speed according to the scene conditions.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | The DVD camcorder automatically sets the appropriate aperture value. | **None** |
| **Manual** | Shutter speed can be set to 1/60, 1/100, 1/250, 1/500, 1/1000, 1/2000, 1/4000, or 1/10000. | M 1/XX |

**Setting the shutter speed manually**

You can set the shutter speed manually. A fast shutter speed can freeze the motion of a fast-moving subject and a slow shutter speed can blur the subject to give the impression of motion. The adjusted value is applied right after moving the **Joystick** right or left to adjust the shutter speed.



1. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select "**Manual,**" then press the **Joystick**.
   - The manual shutter adjustment indicators appear.
2. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select the desired indicator to adjust shutter speed, then press the **Joystick**.
   - The adjusted value is applied right after moving the **Joystick** right or left to adjust the shutter speed.
   - The manual shutter setting will be applied and (M 1/XX) indicator is displayed.
3. To exit, press the **Joystick** repeatedly until the guide disappears.

**Recommended shutter speed when recording**

| Shutter speed | Conditions |
|---|---|
| **1/60** | The shutter speed is fixed at 1/60 second. Black bands that usually appear when shooting a TV screen become narrower. |
| **1/100** | The shutter speed is fixed at 1/100 second for indoor sports such as basketball.<br>The flickering that occurs when shooting under a florescent light or mercury-vapor lamp is reduced. |
| **1/250, 1/500, 1/1000** | Moving cars, trains or other rapidly moving vehicles such as roller-coasters. |
| **1/2000, 1/4000, 1/10000** | Outdoor sports such as golf and tennis. |

- 「 **Focus** 」功能將在手動對焦和自動對焦之間交替。使用自動對焦，螢幕上將不會出現指示說明。
- 如果您沒有使用 DVD 攝錄放影機的經驗，我們建議您使用自動對焦。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「 **Auto** 」。

## Shutter

DVD 攝錄放影機會根據主體亮度自動設定快門速度。您還可根據場景條件來手動調整快門速度。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Auto** | DVD 攝錄放影機會自動設定適當的透鏡光圈值。 | **無** |
| **Manual** | 快門速度可設定為 1/60、1/100、1/250、1/500、1/1000、1/2000、1/4000 或 1/10000。 | M 1/XX |

**手動設定快門速度**

您可以手動設定快門速度。較快的快門速度可以使快速移動主體畫面靜止，而較慢的快門速度可模糊主體以讓人感覺是在移動。在向右或向左移動**搖桿**以調整快門速度後，使用所調整的值。

1. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Manual** 」，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 手動快門調整指示器會出現。
2. 向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇所需指示器調整快門速度，然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 在向右或向左移動**搖桿**以調整快門速度後，使用所調整的值。
   - 將會套用手動快門設定和顯示（M 1/XX）指示器。
3. 若要結束，可重複按下**搖桿**直到此指南消失為止。

**錄製時建議使用的快門速度**

| 快門速度 | 條件 |
|---|---|
| **1/60** | 快門速度固定為 1/60 秒。在拍攝電視螢幕時，常常會出現黑色條帶變窄。 |
| **1/100** | 對於籃球等室內運動，快門速度固定為 1/100 秒。在熒光燈或水銀燈下拍攝時，出現閃爍的情況會減少。 |
| **1/250, 1/500, 1/1000** | 移動的汽車、火車或其他快速移動的車輛，如雲霄飛車。 |
| **1/2000, 1/4000, 1/10000** | 高爾夫和網球等戶外運動。 |

# using the menu items

- We recommend using a tripod when recording with a slow shutter speed.
- If you manually change the shutter speed value when "**Scene Mode(AE)**" function is selected, manual changes are applied with priority.
- The image may not seem smooth when a high speed is set.
- This function will be set to "**Auto**" in the EASY.Q mode.
- When recording with a shutter speed of 1/1000 or higher, make sure the sun is not directly shining into the lens.
- The shutter speed can be set in the DVD camcorder record mode only.
- Fast shutter speed allows a fast-moving subject to be captured one frame at a time vividly.

## 16:9 Wide

You can record movie image in 16:9 or 4:3 according to the desired aspect ratio. Set the proper aspect ratio as your TV. The 16:9 Wide function works in the DVD camcorder record mode only.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Records images to the full screen on a 4:3 TV screen. | - |
| **On** | Records images to the full screen on a 16:9(wide) TV screen. | - |

- Mirror mode and Digital Zoom are not available in the 16:9 Wide mode.
- A movie image is played in 16:9 aspect ratio in the DVD camcorder. When the movie image recorded in 4:3 aspect ratio is played in the DVD camcorder or 16:9 aspect ratio screen, the displayed picture may appear wider than the actual size.

## Quality

You can select the quality of a movie to be recorded. This DVD camcorder can film in the SF (Super Fine), F (Fine) and N (Normal) modes. The Fine mode is set as the factory default.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Super Fine** | Records movie images at the super-fine image quality. | SF |
| **Fine** | Records images at the fine image quality. | F |
| **Normal** | Records images at the normal image quality. | N |

- Recorded files are encoded with Variable Bit Rate (VBR). VBR is an encoding system that automatically adjusts the bit rate according to the recording image.
- The quality can be set in the DVD camcorder record mode only.

# 使用選單項目

- 透過較慢的快門速度錄製時，我們建議使用三腳架。
- 如果在選擇「 **Scene Mode(AE)** 」功能時手動變更快門速度值，則會首先套用手動變更。
- 在設定很高的速度時，影像可能顯得不柔和。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「 **Auto** 」。
- 在以 1/1000 或以上的快門速度進行錄製時，請確保陽光不會直射到透鏡上。
- 快門速度只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。
- 較快的快門速度可一次清楚拍攝到快速移動的主體。

## 16:9 Wide

根據所需的畫面比率，可使用 16:9 或 4:3 錄製影片圖像。請按照電視規格設定合適的畫面比率。16:9 寬螢幕功能僅能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下操作。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 將影像以全屏顯示錄製到 4:3 電視機屏幕上。 | - |
| **On** | 將影像以全屏顯示錄製到 16:9（ 寬 ）電視機屏幕上。 | - |

- 鏡像模式和數位縮放在 16:9 寬螢幕模式下不可用。
- 在 DVD 攝錄放影機中影片影像以 16:9 畫面比率播放。在 DVD 攝錄放影機或 16:9 畫面比率的螢幕上播放以 4:3 畫面比率錄製的影片影像時，顯示的圖片看上去可能會比實際尺寸寬一些。

## Quality

您可以選擇要錄製的影片品質。此 DVD 攝錄放影機可在 SF( 超精細 )F( 精細 )和 N（ 正常 ）模式中拍攝。清晰清晰模式設定為出廠預設值。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Super Fine** | 以超精細影像品質來錄製影片影像。 | SF |
| **Fine** | 以精細影像品質來錄製影像。 | F |
| **Normal** | 以正常影像品質來錄製影像。 | N |

- 錄製的檔案具有可變位元速率編碼（VBR）。VBR 是根據錄製影像自動調整的編碼系統。
- 此品質只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。

## Wind Cut

You can reduce wind noise when recording sound from the built-in microphone.
If "**Wind Cut**" is set to "**On**," the low-frequency components in the sound picked up by the microphone will be cut off during recording: this makes it easier to hear voices and sound during playback.

- Use the Wind Cut when recording in windy places such as a beach.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| **On** | Minimizes wind noise or other noise while recording. | ⚑ |

- Make sure the "**Wind Cut**" is set to "**Off**" when you want the microphone to be sensitive as possible.
- The Wind Cut function works only in the DVD camcorder record mode with the built-in microphone.

## Back Light

When subject is lit from behind, this function will compensate for lighting so that the subject is not too dark.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| **On** | - Backlight compensation is executed.<br>- Backlight compensation brightens the subject quickly. | ☼ |

**Back lighting influences recording when the subject is darker than the background:**

- The subject is in front of a window.
- The person to be recorded is wearing white or shiny clothes and is placed against a bright background; the person's face is too dark to distinguish his/her features.
- The subject is outdoors and the background is overcast.
- The light sources are too bright.
- The subject is against a snowy background.

<Back Light off>

This function will be set to "**Off**" in the EASY.Q mode.

---

## Wind Cut

在從內置麥克風錄製聲音時，可以減少風聲。
如果將「 **Wind Cut** 」設定為「 **On** 」，則會在錄製期間消除以下麥克風中的有聲低頻元件：這會在播放時更加容易聽到噪音和聲音。

- 在沙灘等有風吹的地方錄製時，請使用消除風聲功能。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| **On** | 在錄製時最小化風聲或其他噪音。 | ⚑ |

- 在希望麥克風的收音能儘量敏感時，確保將「 **Wind Cut** 」設定為「 **Off** 」。
- 消除風聲功能僅能與內置麥克風配合在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下操作。

## Back Light

在主體從後面亮起時，此功能將會補償光線以使主體不太暗淡。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| **On** | – 進行背光補償。<br>– 背光補償可快速加亮主體。 | ☼ |

**在主體比背景暗時，背光會影響錄製效果：**

<Back Light on>

- 主體位於窗前。
- 將被錄製的人穿著白色或亮色服飾，並處於明亮的背景中； 此人的臉龐將顯得太暗而無法辨別其五官。
- 主體在戶外，而背景陰暗。
- 光源太亮。
- 主體處於雪景中。

在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「 **Off** 」。

## C. Nite

You can make the subject recorded appear to be in slow motion by controlling the shutter speed, or a brighter image in dark places without a compromise in colours.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| **1/30** | Records a brighter image brighter. | C.N 1/30 |
| **1/15** | Records a brighter image even in a dark place. | C.N 1/15 |

- When using C.Nite, the focus adjusts slowly and white dots may appear on the screen, this is not a defect.
- C.Nite function is not available with the following functions: "**Scene Mode(AE)**," "**Shutter**," "**Exposure**," "**Digital Zoom**," "**Digital Effect**" ("**Emboss2**," "**Mosaic**," "**Mirror**,"**Pastel1**","and "**Pastel2**").
- If Anti-Shake(DIS) is set, C.Nite mode will be released.
- This function will be set to **"Off"** in the EASY.Q mode.

## Light (SC-DX105 only)

You can record images brighter in a dark place.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Records a image without using light. | **None** |
| **On** | Records a clear image in a dark place without sacrificing color with the light. | 💡 |

CAUTION

- The LED light can become extremely hot. Do not touch it while in operation or soon after turning it off, otherwise serious injury may result.
- Do not place the DVD camcorder into the carrying case immediately after using the light, since it remains extremely hot for some time.
- Do not use near flammable or explosive materials.

- The light enables you to record a subject in dark places.
- The light will not turn on or off while you are recording.
- The range of the light is limited. (up to 6.6ft (2m))
- This function can be set only in the DVD camcorder record mode.
- This function will be set to **"Off"** in the EASY.Q mode.

---

## C. Nite

在不降低色彩的情況下，透過控制快門速度或使暗處的影像變亮，您可以用慢動作拍攝物體。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| **1/30** | 錄製較亮的影像。 | C.N 1/30 |
| **1/15** | 還可在暗處錄製較亮的影像。 | C.N 1/15 |

- 使用彩色夜景時，焦點調整會很慢，而且畫面上可能會出現白點，這不是缺陷。
- 彩色夜景功能不能與下列功能配合使用：「**Scene Mode(AE)**」、「**Shutter**」、「**Exposure**」、「**Digital Zoom**」、「**Digital Effect**」（「**Emboss2**」、「**Mosaic**」、「**Mirror**」、「**Pastel1**」和「**Pastel2**」)。
- 如果設定了防震 (DIS)，將會釋放彩色夜景。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「**Off**」。

## Light（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

您可在暗處錄製較亮的影像。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 在不使用照明時錄製影像。 | **無** |
| **On** | 在不降低照明燈色彩的情況下，在暗處錄製清晰的影像。 | 💡 |

注意

- LED 燈光將會過熱。切勿在操作時或熄滅後馬上觸摸它，否則可能導致嚴重受傷。
- 切勿在使用燈光後立刻將 DVD 攝錄放影機放入攜帶套中，因為它在此時仍舊過熱。
- 切勿靠近易燃性或爆炸性材料。

- 燈光功能可讓您錄製位於暗處的主體。
- 將無法開啟或關閉燈光功能。
- 燈光功能的範圍相當有限。(最遠 6.6 英呎(2 米))
- 此功能只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「**Off**」。

## Fader

You can give your recording a professional look by using special effects such as fade in at the beginning of a sequence or fade out at the end of a sequence.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| **On** | Fader is executed. | ▥ |

Fade in (approx. 3 seconds)
Fade out (approx. 3 seconds)

### Fade in

Press the **Recording start/stop** button when "**Fader**" is set to "**On**." Recording starts with a dark screen and then the image and sound are faded in (fade in).

### Fade out

When you want to stop recording with fade out, set "**Fader**" to "**On**" again during recording. Then press the **Recording start/stop** button. Recording stops as the image and sound are faded out (fade out), image and sound are faded in (fade in).

- This function can be set only in the DVD camcorder record mode.
- This function will be set to **"Off"** in the EASY.Q mode.

## Guideline

- Guideline displays a certain pattern on the LCD screen so that you can easily set the image composition when recording movie or photo images.
- The DVD camcorder provides 3 types of guidelines.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| **Cross** | Enables you to center the subject for proper recording. | ⊞ |
| **Grid** | Enables you to place the subject in the center square for proper positioning. | ▦ |
| **Safety Zone** | Enables you to place the subject within a safety zone which prevents it being cut when editing in 4:3 for left and right and 2.35:1 for top and bottom. | ⊡ |

- Positioning the subject at the cross point of the guideline makes a balanced composition.
- Guideline cannot be recorded on the images being recorded.

## Fader

透過使用特殊效果，您可使您的錄製看起來更專業，如在錄製順序開始時使用淡入或在順序結束時使用淡出。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| **On** | 執行淡化功能。 | ▥ |

### 淡入

按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕（在「**Fader**」設定為「**On**」時）。錄製以黑螢幕開始，然後淡入影像和聲音。

### 淡出

在想停止淡出錄製時，可在錄製時再次將「**Fader**」設定為「**On**」。然後按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。錄製會隨著淡出影像和聲音（淡出）、淡入影像和聲音（淡入）而停止。

- 此功能只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。
- 在 EASY Q 模式下，此功能將被設定為「**Off**」。

## Guideline

- 導向圖在 LCD 螢幕上顯示某種圖案，以便您在錄製影片和相片影像時能夠輕鬆設計影像構圖。
- DVD 攝錄放影機提供 3 種類型的導向圖。

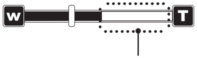
| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| **Cross** | 將放在中間的主體作為最常見的錄製構圖進行錄製。 | ⊞ |
| **Grid** | 錄製水平或垂直構圖上或使用特寫的主體。 | ▦ |
| **Safety Zone** | 在以左右比例為 4:3 或上下比例為 2.35:1 進行編輯時防止發生中斷的安全內區錄製主體。 | ⊡ |

- 在導向圖的交叉點定位的主體形成平衡構圖。
- 導向圖無法被錄製到正在錄製的影像上。

# using the menu items

## Digital Zoom

You can select the maximum zoom level in case you want to zoom to a level greater than 34x (the default setting) during recording. Zooming more than 34x is achieved digitally, up to 1200x when combined with optical zoom.



This right side of the bar shows the digital zooming factor. The zooming zone appears when you select the zooming level.

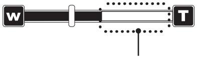
| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Up to 34x zoom is performed optically. | **None** |
| **100x, 200x, 400x, 1200x** | Up to 34x zoom is performed optically, and after that, up to 100x (200x, 400x, or 1200x) is performed digitally. | **None** |

- The image quality may deteriorate depending on how much you zoom in on the subject.
- Maximum zooming may result in lower image quality.
- Digital Zoom is not available while **"Anti-Shake(DIS)," "EASY.Q," "C. Nite," "Digital Effect" ("Emboss2," "Mosaic," "Mirror,""Pastel1"** and **"Pastel2")** is in use.
- Once **"Anti-Shake(DIS)," "C.Nite," "EASY.Q," "Digital Effect" ("Emboss2," "Mosaic," "Mirror," "Pastel1"** and **"Pastel2")** is selected, Digital Zoom mode will be released. (The Digital Zoom mode will be backed up when they are released. (**"C. Nite," "EASY.Q,"** only))
- This function can be set only in the DVD camcorder record mode.

# 使用選單項目

## Digital Zoom

如果您想在錄製時放大至高於 34X（預設設定）的級別，可選擇最大縮放桿。34 倍以上的縮放是以數位形式來完成，在結合光學縮放時可進行高達 1200 倍的縮放。



右列顯示數位縮放比。在選擇縮放級別時，會顯示縮放範圍。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 可透過光學方式執行高達 34X 的縮放。 | **無** |
| **100x、200x、400x、1200x** | 可透過光學方式執行高達 34X 的縮放，並透過數位方式執行高達 100x（200x、400x 或 1200x）的縮放。 | **無** |

- 影像品質可能因為您對主體的放大程度而降低。
- 最大程度的縮放可能會導致較低的影像品質。
- 數位縮放不可用（當使用 **「Anti-Shake(DIS)」、「EASY.Q」、「C. Nite」、「Digital Effect」、(「Emboss2」、「Mosaic」、「Mirror」、「Pastel1」** 和 **「Pastel2」)** 時）。
- 在選擇 **「Anti-Shake(DIS)」、「C.Nite」、「EASY.Q」、「Digital Effect」(「Emboss2」、「Mosaic」、「Mirror」、「Pastel1」** 和 **「Pastel2」)** 之後，將會解除數位縮放模式。（數位縮放模式在其解除時將被備份。（僅適用於 **「C. Nite」**，**「EASY.Q」**））
- 此功能只能在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下設定。

## File No. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)

- File numbers are assigned to photo images in the order they were recorded.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Series** | Assigns file numbers in sequence even if the memory card is replaced with another one or after formatting, or after deleting all files. The file number is reset when a new folder is created. | **None** |
| **Reset** | Resets the file number to 0001 even after formatting, deleting all or inserting a new memory card. Use “**Reset**” when the folder and files cannot be created anymore because the number of the folders and files reaches the limit. | **None** |

- This function can be set only in the digital camera record mode.

---

## File No.（ 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ）

- 將按照錄製照片影像的順序為它們分配檔案編號。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Series** | 即使在進行格式化或刪除所有檔案後更換記憶卡，也要按順序指定檔案編號。在建立新資料夾時，會重設檔案編號。 | **無** |
| **Reset** | 甚至在格式化、刪除所有或插入新記憶卡後，也要將檔案編號重設為 0001。在因為資料夾和檔案數目達到限度而無法建立資料夾和檔案時，使用「 **Reset** 」。 | **無** |

- 此功能只能在數位相機錄製模式下設定。

# using the menu items

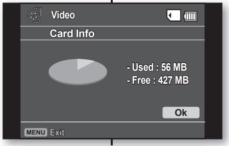
## PLAYBACK MENU ITEM

### Card Manage (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)

- You can manage a memory card for recording in the digital camera mode.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Format** | Delete all files and options on the memory card including protected files. | **None** |
| **Card Info** | Shows the card information such as used space, free space. | **None** |

- If you execute the format function, all files will be deleted completely and the erased files cannot be recovered.
- Do not turn the power off in the middle of formatting.
- A memory card with the protection tab set to lock will not be formatted. ➥page 53
- Card information may appear depending on the card type.
- This function can be set only in the digital camera play mode.



- Used : 56 MB
- Free : 427 MB

## SETTING MENU ITEMS

You can set up the date and time, OSD language, and display settings of the DVD camcorder.

### Date/Time Set

Set the current date and time so that they can be recorded correctly. ➥page 29

# 使用選單項目

## 播放選單項目

### Card Manage（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

- 您可以管理用於在數位相機播放模式中進行錄製的記憶卡。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Format** | 刪除記憶卡上的所有檔案和選項，包括受保護的檔案。 | **無** |
| **Card Info** | 顯示卡資訊，例如已使用的空間、可用空間。 | **無** |

- 如果執行格式化功能，將完全刪除所有檔案，並且無法恢復刪除的檔案。
- 切勿在格式化期間關閉電源。
- 不能格式化保護標籤設定為鎖定的記憶卡。➥ 第53頁
- 卡資訊視卡類型而出現。
- 此功能只能在數位相機播放模式下設定。

## 設定選單選項

您可以設定日期和時間、OSD語言以及顯示DVD攝錄放影機的設定。

### Date/Time Set

設定目前的日期和時間以便對其進行正常錄製。➥ 第29頁

## Date/Time

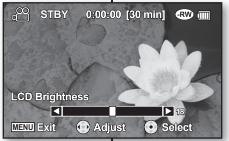
You can set the date and time to display on the LCD screen.

- Before you use the "**Date/Time**" function, you must set the date and time. ➥page 29

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Current date and time information is not displayed. | **None** |
| **Date** | Displays the current date. | **JAN/01/2008** |
| **Time** | Displays the current time. | **12:00 AM** |
| **Date&Time** | Displays the current date and time. | **JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM** |

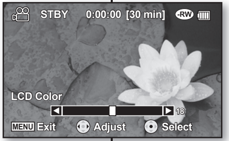
- **The date/time will read "JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM" in the following conditions.**
  - If a movie or photo recording was made before setting the date/time in the DVD camcorder.
  - When the button type battery for internal clock becomes weak or dead.

## LCD Brightness



You can adjust the brightness of the LCD screen to compensate for ambient lighting conditions. Moving the **Joystick** right will brighten the screen whereas moving it left will darken the screen.

- A brighter LCD screen setting consumes more battery power.
- You can adjust the LCD brightness from 0 to 35 when the ambient lighting is too bright and the monitor is hard to see.
- LCD Brightness does not affect the brightness of images to be stored.



## LCD Color

You can adjust the LCD color from 0 to 35.
When you set color range, the higher the figure is, the brighter the LCD screen will be.

## Date/Time

您可以設定在 LCD 螢幕上顯示的日期和時間。

- 在使用「**Date/Time**」功能之前，您必須設定日期和時間。
  ➥ 第 29 頁

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 不會顯示目前的日期和時間資訊。 | **無** |
| **Date** | 顯示目前日期。 | **JAN/01/2008** |
| **Time** | 顯示目前時間。 | **12:00 AM** |
| **Date&Time** | 顯示目前的日期和時間。 | **JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM** |

- **日期 / 時間計數在以下條件下將顯示為「JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM」。**
  - 如果在設定日期 / 時間 ( 在 DVD 攝錄放影機中 ) 之前進行影片或相片錄製。
  - 在內部時鐘的鈕扣電池電量不足或耗盡時。

## LCD Brightness

可調整 LCD 螢幕的亮度，以補償周圍環境的光線條件。向右移動**搖桿**將會加亮螢幕，而向左移動則會使螢幕變暗。

- 較亮的 LCD 螢幕設定將會消耗較多的電池電量。
- 週圍環境光線太亮且顯示器難以清楚檢視時，您可以調整 LCD 亮度 ( 範圍從 0 至 35 )。
- LCD 亮度不會影響要儲存影像的亮度。

## LCD Color

您可以在 0 至 35 之間調整 LCD 顏色。
在設定顏色範圍時，設定數字越高，LCD 螢幕就會越亮。

# using the menu items

## Beep Sound

You can turn the beep sound on or off.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Cancels the beep sound. | **None** |
| **On** | When on, a beep will sound every time a button is pressed. | **None** |

- The beep sound is off while recording movies.
- When beep sound is set to off, the power on/off sound is off.

## Shutter Sound (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)

You can turn the shutter sound on or off.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Cancels the shutter sound. | **None** |
| **On** | When on, the shutter will sound with each press of the **PHOTO** button. | **None** |

## Auto Power Off

You can set the DVD camcorder to turn off automatically when there is no operation for 6 minutes in the STBY mode and thumbnail index view.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | - The DVD camcorder does not turn off automatically.<br>- The DVD camcorder does not enter the sleep mode even if 3 minutes go on without any button pressed. | **None** |
| **6 Min** | - The DVD camcorder enters the sleep mode if no operation is for 3 minutes in STBY or thumbnail index view. If no operation goes on 3 minutes more, it turns off automatically. However, if any operation occurs in the sleep mode, the DVD camcorder comes out of the sleep mode.<br>- The DVD camcorder does not turn off automatically during recording and playback. | **None** |

# 使用選單項目

## Beep Sound

您可以開啟或關閉嗶聲。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 取消嗶聲。 | **無** |
| **On** | 開啟時，每次按下按鈕時將會響起嗶聲。 | **無** |

- 在錄製影片時會關閉嗶聲。
- 將嗶聲設定為關閉時，會關閉開啟 / 關閉嗶聲。

## Shutter Sound( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105)

您可以開啟或關閉快門聲音。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 取消快門聲音。 | **無** |
| **On** | 開啟時，每次按下 **PHOTO** 按鈕時會響起快門聲音。 | **無** |

## Auto Power Off

您可以將 DVD 攝錄放影機設定為在 STBY 模式下和縮略索引視圖中無作業時間長達 6 分鐘後自動關閉。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | – DVD 攝錄放影機不會自動關閉。<br>– DVD 攝錄放影機在沒有按下任何按鈕時，即使過了 3 分鐘也不會進入休眠模式。 | **無** |
| **6 Min** | – DVD 攝錄放影機在待機（STBY）或縮略索引視圖中無作業時間長達 3 分鐘後進入休眠模式。若超過 3 分鐘沒有執行任何操作，則會自動關閉。但是，如果在睡眠模式下進行操作，則 DVD 攝錄放影機會退出睡眠模式。<br>– 在錄製和播放期間，DVD 攝錄放影機不會自動關閉。 | **無** |

## Remote (SC-DX105 only)

This function allows you to enable or disable the remote control for use with the DVD camcorder.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function.<br>- The () indicator appears when you use the remote control. | **None** |
| **On** | You can control the DVD camcorder with the remote control. | **None** |

## TV Display

The TV Display function works in recording and play modes.
You can select the output path of the OSD (On Screen Display). This allows you to set the OSD for viewing on the viewfinder, LCD screen or an external TV.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | The OSD appears in the LCD screen and viewfinder only. | **None** |
| **On** | The OSD appears in the LCD screen, viewfinder and TV. | **None** |

## USB Connect (VP-DX103/DX105 only)

Using the USB cable, you can connect the DVD camcorder to a PC or a printer.
You can copy your movie and photo images from the memory card to a PC and print your photo images in the digital camera mode. You can use the DVD camcorder as PC cam in the DVD camcorder record mode.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Mass Storage** | Connect to a PC to use the DVD camcorder as mass storage in the digital camera mode. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) | **None** |
| **PictBridge** | Connect to a printer. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) | **None** |
| **PC Cam** | Connect to a PC to use the DVD camcorder as PC cam in the DVD camcorder record mode. | **None** |

## Default Set

You can initialize the DVD camcorder settings to the factory defaults. Initializing the DVD camcorder settings to the factory defaults does not affect recorded images.

## Menu Color

You can select the desired menu color to display the menu.
“**Midnight Blue**” → “**Lovely Pink**” → “**Mystic Purple**” → “**Sunny Orange**” → “**Oasis Green**”

## Remote（僅適用於 SC-DX105）

此功能可讓您允許或禁止用遙控器控制 DVD 攝錄放影機。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。<br>– 使用遙控器時將出現（）指示器。 | **無** |
| **On** | 您可以透過使用遙控器來控制 DVD 攝錄放影機。 | **無** |

## TV Display

電視顯示功能可在錄製和播放模式下操作。
您可以選擇 OSD（螢幕顯示）的輸出路徑。這允許您設置用於在取景器、LCD 螢幕或外接電視上查看的 OSD。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | OSD 僅顯示在 LCD 螢幕和觀景窗中。 | **無** |
| **On** | OSD 會顯示在 LCD 螢幕、觀景窗和電視上。 | **無** |

## USB Connect ( 僅適用於 VP-DX103/DX105)

使用 USB 纜線，您可以將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接至電腦或印表機。
您可以將影片或相片從記憶卡複製到電腦上，並在數位相機模式下列印您的相片影像。在 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製模式下，您可以將 DVD 攝錄放影機作為電腦相機使用。

| 設定 | 內容 | 畫面顯示語言 |
|---|---|---|
| **Mass Storage** | 連接至電腦以在數位相機模式下將 DVD 攝錄放影機用作高容量儲存裝置。( 僅限 SC-DX103/DX105 ) | **無** |
| **PictBridge** | 連接到印表機。( 僅限 SC-DX103/DX105 ) | **無** |
| **PC Cam** | 連接至電腦以在數位相機錄製模式下將 DVD 攝錄放影機用作電腦相機。 | **無** |

## Default Set

您可以將 DVD 攝錄放影機設定初始化為工廠預設。
將 DVD 攝錄放影機設定初始化為工廠預設不會影響錄製的影像。

## Menu Color

您可以選擇要顯示此選單所需的顏色。
「**Midnight Blue**」→「**Lovely Pink**」→「**Mystic Purple**」→「**Sunny Orange**」→「**Oasis Green**」

# using the menu items

## Transparency

You can select the desired transparency to display the menu.
"**0%**" → "**20%**" → "**40%**" → "**60%**"

- This function can be set only in the record mode.

## Language

You can select a desired language to display the menu and messages.

"**English**" → "**한국어**" → "**Français**" → "**Deutsch**" → "**Italiano**" → "**Español**" → "**Português**" → "**Nederlands**"→ "**Svenska**" → "**Suomi**" → "**Norsk**" → "**Dansk**"→ "**Polski**" → "**Česky**" → "**Slovensky**"→"**Magyar**" → "**Українська**" → "**Русский**" → "**中文**" → "ไทย" → "**Türkçe**" → "فارسی" → "العربية" → **"IsiZulu"**

- **"Language"** options may be changed without prior notice.

## Demo

Demonstration automatically shows you the major functions that are included with your DVD camcorder so that you may use them more easily.

| Settings | Contents | On-screen display |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | Disables the function. | **None** |
| **On** | Activates demonstration mode and shows various features. | **None** |

- Demonstration starts in the following cases:
  - Right after "**Demo**" is set to "**On.**"
  - With "**Auto Power Off**"set to "**Off,**" if there is no operation for about 6 minutes in the STBY mode whether a disc is inserted or not.
  - Demonstration stops temporarily by pressing other buttons (**MENU**, **Joystick**, **Recording start/stop**, **etc**).
- Demo is dimmed in the setting menu while recording.
- In the digital camera record mode, the demonstration will not take place even if it set to "**On.**" (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

# 使用選單項目

## Transparency

您可以選擇要顯示此選單所需的透明度。
"**0%**" → "**20%**" → "**40%**" → "**60%**"

- 此功能只能在錄製模式下設定。

## Language

您可以選擇所需的語言以顯示選單和訊息。

"**English**" → "**한국어**" → "**Français**" → "**Deutsch**" → "**Italiano**" → "**Español**" → "**Português**" → "**Nederlands**"→ "**Svenska**" → "**Suomi**" → "**Norsk**" → "**Dansk**"→ "**Polski**" → "**Česky**" → "**Slovensky**"→"**Magyar**" → "**Українська**" → "**Русский**" → "**中文**" → "ไทย" → "**Türkçe**" → "فارسی" → "العربية" → **"IsiZulu"**

- **「Language」**選項可能會變更，而不預先通知。

## Demo

示範畫面將自動顯示 DVD 攝錄放影機中的主要功能，讓您可以更輕鬆地使用這些功能。

| **設定** | **內容** | **畫面顯示語言** |
|---|---|---|
| **Off** | 停用功能。 | **無** |
| **On** | 啟動示範模式並顯示各種功能。 | **無** |

- 在以下情況下會開啟示範畫面：
  - 在將「**Demo**」設定為「**On**」時。
  - 「**Auto Power Off**」設定為「**Off**」，即如果在待機模式中 6 分鐘後無任何操作，無論光碟插入與否均會顯示。
  - 透過按下其他按鈕（**MENU**、**搖桿**、**錄製開始 / 停止等**）會暫時停止示範畫面。
- 在錄製時，示範畫面會在設定選單中變暗。
- 在數位相機錄製模式下，將不會出現示範畫面，即使將其設定為「**On**」。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 )

# printing photo images (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

You can print photo images by inserting the DPOF setting card to the DPOF-compatible printer or connecting the DVD camcorder to the PictBridge printer.

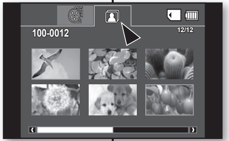
## DPOF PRINT SETTING

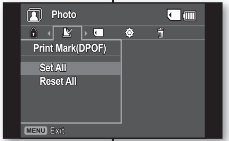
- This function works only in the Play mode. ➥page 21
- This DVD camcorder is compatible with DPOF (Digital Print Order Format). You can select which images to be printed and the number of prints with this DVD camcorder. This feature is useful to print with a DPOF-compatible printer or when bringing storage media to a photo lab for printing.

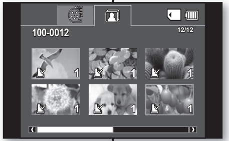
1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power.
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. ➥page 30
2. Press the **MODE** button, then use the **Joystick** to select the photo ( 🖼 ) tab to set the photo play mode.
   - The thumbnail index view of photo images appears.
3. Press the **MENU** button.
4. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Print Mark (DPOF)**."
5. Move the **Joystick** up or down to select the desired option ("**Set All**" or "**Reset All**"), then press the **Joystick**.
   - "**Set All**": Print-marks all images.
     You can print only one copy per one image by selecting "**Set All**."
   - "**Reset All**": Removes the print mark.
6. The message according to the selected option will appear. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Yes,**" then press the **Joystick**.

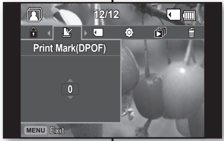
You can set the number of prints in the single display view only. Press the **MENU** button then move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Print Mark (DPOF)**." Move the **Joystick** up or down to select the number of printing. Up to 99 copies can be set to print of each image. To exit, press the **MENU** button.

- Print marked photo images will show the (✓) indicator when they are displayed.
- The "**Reset All**" option may take a long time depending on the number of stored images.
- DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) allows you to embed printing information on your recording medium's MISC folder. Select the pictures to be printed and how many prints to make.
- This function is not available for movie images.









# 列印相片影像（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

可透過將 DPOF 設定卡插入到與 DPOF 相容的印表機或將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接到 PictBridge 印表機來列印照片影像。

## DPOF 列印設定

- 此功能僅在播放模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 此 DVD 攝錄放影機與 DPOF（數位列印順序格式）相容。您可以使用此 DVD 攝錄放影機來選擇要列印的影像和列印張數。透過使用與 DPOF 相容的印表機列印或將儲存媒體放到的相片標籤進行列印時，此功能很有用。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源。
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。➥ 第 30 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕，然後使用**搖桿**選擇相片（ 🖼 ）標籤以設定相片播放模式。
   - 會顯示相片影像的縮略索引視圖。
3. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕。
4. 向右或向左移動以選擇「**Print Mark (DPOF)**」。
5. 向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇所需的選項（「**Set All**」或「**Reset All**」），然後按下**搖桿**。
   - 「**Set All**」：對所有影像加上列印標記。
     如果選擇「**Set All**」，則每幅影像只能列印一份。
   - 「**Reset All**」：移除列印標記。
6. 訊息將視所選項目而出現。向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Yes**」，然後按下**搖桿**。

您僅能在單一顯示視圖中設定要列印的張數。按下 **MENU** 按鈕 然後向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Print Mark (DPOF)**」。向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇列印份數。每張影像最多可設定為 99 份複製影像。若要結束，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

- 列印有標記的相片影像將會顯示（✓）顯示器（顯示時）。
- 「**Reset All**」選項可能會因儲存的影像張數而需要較長時間。
- DPOF（數位列印順序格式）可讓您將列印資訊放入錄製媒體的 MISC 資料夾中。選擇要列印的畫面和張數。
- 此功能不可用於影片影像。

# printing photo images (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

## DIRECT PRINTING WITH A PICTBRIDGE

- If your printer is compatible with PictBridge, photo images can be printed easily by connecting the camcorder to the printer directly with the USB cable.
  DPOF cannot be set while PictBridge in use. ➥page 83

**NOTICE:** After selecting "**PictBridge**" in the menu, connect the USB cable.

1. Move to the photo play mode. ➥page 59
   - Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**.
   - Press the **MODE** button and use the **Joystick** to select the photo (🖼) tab to set the photo play mode.
2. Set the "**USB Connect**" to "**PictBridge.**" ➥page 81
   - (Press the **MENU** button → Use the **Joystick** to select "**Setting**" → "**USB Connect**" → "**PictBridge**")
3. Connect your DVD camcorder to the printer using the provided USB cable.
4. Turn your printer power on.
   - The PictBridge menu screen appears automatically after a short period.
   - To see the previous or next photo image, press the **MENU** button and move the **Joystick** left or right.
   - Each press of the **MENU** button toggles the PictBridge menu screen on or off.
5. Press the **MENU** button. Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Print,**" and then press the **Joystick** to print.
   - The selected photo image will be printed.
   - To stop printing after printing starts, press the **MENU** button.

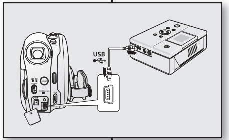
### Setting the number of copies to print

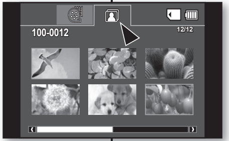
Press the **MENU** button.

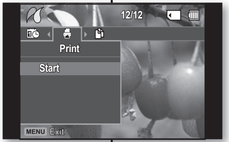
Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Copies**," then move the **Joystick** up or down to select the number of copies.

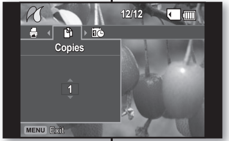
To exit, press the **MENU** button.

- If the image moves to the previous or next, the number of copies is reset.









# 列印相片影像（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

## 使用 PICTBRIDGE 直接列印

- 如果您的印表機與 PictBridge 不相容，可將有 USB 纜線的攝錄放影機直接連接到印表機以輕鬆列印相片影像。
  在使用 PictBridge 時無法設定 DPOF。➥ 第 83 頁

**注意：**在選單中選擇「**PictBridge**」後 連接 USB 纜線。

1. 移至相片播放模式。➥ 第 59 頁
   - 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。
   - 按下 **MODE** 按鈕並使用**搖桿**選擇相片（🖼）標籤以設定相片播放模式。
2. 將「**USB Connect**」設定為「**PictBridge.**」
   ➥ 第 81 頁
   - （按下 **MENU** 按鈕 → 使用**搖桿**選擇「**Setting**」→「**USB Connect**」→「**PictBridge**」）
3. 使用隨附的 USB 纜線將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接到印表機。
4. 開啟印表機電源。
   - PictBridge 選單畫面很快將會自動顯示。
   - 若要查看上一個或下一個相片影像，按下 **MENU** 按鈕並向左或向右移動**搖桿**。
   - 每次按下 **MENU** 按鈕時，都會將 PictBridge 選單畫面切換為開啟或關閉。
5. 按下 **MENU** 按鈕。向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Print**」，然後按下**搖桿**進行列印。
   - 將會列印所選擇的相片影像。
   - 若要在列印開始後停止列印，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

### 設定列印份數

按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「**Copies**」，然後向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇複製的份數。

若要結束，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

- 如果影像移至上一個影像或下一個影像，則會重設份數。

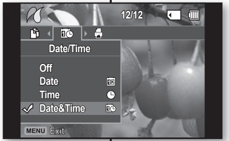
**Setting the date/time imprint option**

Move the **Joystick** right or left to select "**Date/Time**," then move the **Joystick** up or down to select the desired option. To exit, press the **MENU** button.

**To print using the DPOF setting**

If the printer is compatible with DPOF, you can use the DPOF setting. ➥page 83

- If the printer is not recognized, or to print again after direct printing with a PictBridge printer, remove the USB cable, select "**PictBridge**" in the menu again, then reconnect the cable.
- If the "**USB Connect**" menu is set to "**Mass Storage**," you cannot connect a Pictbridge compatible printer to the camcorder through USB cable. In some instances, the DVD camcorder may not connect to the printer, this will depend on the make of the printer. If connection fails, disconnect the USB cable and turn off the printer and back on. Then, connect the USB cable and set the DVD camcorder to "**PictBridge**."
- The date/time option may not be supported by all printers. Check with your printer manufacturer. The "**Date/Time**" menu cannot be set up if the printer does not support this option.
- PictBridge™ is a registered trademark of CIPA (Camera & Imaging Products Association), an image transfer standard developed by Canon, Fuji, HP, Olympus, Seiko Epson, and Sony.
- Use the USB cable provided with the DVD camcorder.
- Use the AC power adaptor for your DVD camcorder during PictBridge direct printing. Turning your DVD camcorder off during printing might damage data on the storage media.
- Movie images are not available for printing.
- You can set various printing options depending on the printer. Please refer to the user manual of the printer for details.
- Do not remove USB cable or memory card during printing.
- You may not print photo images recorded on other devices.



12/12
1
JAN/01/2008 12:00 AM
100-0012

**設定日期 / 時間壓印選項**

向右或向左移動**搖桿**以選擇「 **Date/Time** 」，然後向上或向下移動**搖桿**以選擇所需的選項。若要結束，可按下 **MENU** 按鈕。

**使用 DPOF 設定進行列印**

如果印表機與 DPOF 不相容 您可以使用 DPOF 設定。➥ 第 83 頁

- 如果沒有識別出印表機，或要透過 PictBridge 印表機在直接列印後再次列印，可拔下 USB 纜線，並在選單中再次選擇「 **PictBridge** 」，然後重新連接纜線。
- 如果將「 **USB Connect** 」選單設定為「 **Mass Storage** 」，您無法透過 USB 纜線將與 Pictbridge 相容的印表機連接到攝錄放影機。在某些情況下，DVD 攝錄放影機可能無法連接到列印機，這將視印表機的構造而定。如果連線失敗，則拔下 USB 線纜，然後關閉印表機再重新開啟。然後，連接 USB 纜線，並將 DVD 攝錄放影機設定為「 **PictBridge** 」。
- 可能不是所有的印表機都支援日期 / 時間選項。請洽詢您的印表機製造商。如果印表機不支援此選項，則無法設定「 **Date/Time** 」選單。
- PictBridge ™ 是 CIPA ( 相機與影像產品協會 ) 的註冊商標，是由 Canon、Fuji、HP、Olympus、Seiko Epson 和 Sony 開發的影像傳輸標準。
- 使用 DVD 攝錄放影機隨附的 USB 纜線。
- 使用攝錄放影機的交流電源適配器 ( 在 PictBridge 直接列印期間 )。在列印期間關閉您的 DVD 攝錄放影機可能會損毀儲存媒體上的資料。
- 不可列印的影片影像。
- 您可以根據印表機設定不同的列印選項。請參閱印表機的使用者手冊以獲得詳細資訊。
- 切勿在列印期間拔下 USB 纜線或記憶卡。
- 您可能無法列印錄製在其他裝置上的相片影像。

# connecting to AV devices

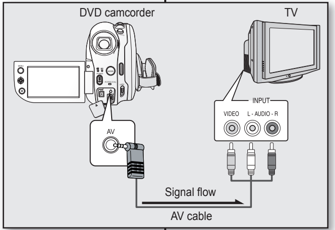
You can view the recorded movie and photo images(SC-DX103/ DX105 only) on a large screen by connecting the DVD camcorder to a TV.

## CONNECTING TO A TV

- To play back your recordings, the television must be NTSC compatible. ➥page 102
- We recommend that you use the AC power adaptor as the power source for the DVD camcorder.

**Use the provided AV cable to connect the DVD camcorder to a TV as follows:**

1. Connect the end of the AV cable with the single plug to the AV jack of the DVD camcorder.
2. Connect the other end with video (yellow) and left(white)/ right(red) audio cables to the TV.



- For more information about the connection, refer to your TV's user manual.
- Before connecting, make sure that the volume on TV is turned down: forgetting this may cause feedback from the TV speakers.
- Carefully connect the input and output cables to the corresponding connections on the device the DVD camcorder is being used with.

### Viewing on TV screen

1. Turn on the TV and set the input selector to the Input connection the DVD camcorder is connected to.
   - This is often referred to as "line." Refer to the TV instruction manual for how to switch the TV input.
2. Turn the DVD camcorder on.
   - Slide the **POWER** switch downwards, then open the LCD screen.
   - Set the appropriate storage media. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
   - Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode. ➥page 21
   - The image from the DVD camcorder will appear on the TV screen.
3. Perform playback.
   - You can perform playback, recording or make settings in the menu while viewing on your TV screen.

# 連接至 AV 裝置

您可以透過將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接到電視，以大型螢幕檢視錄製的影片和相片影像 ( 僅限 SC-DX103/ DX105 )。

## 連接至電視機

- 要播放錄製內容，電視機必須具備 NTSC 相容性。➥ 第 102 頁
- 我們建議您使用交流電源適配器作為 DVD 攝錄放影機的電源。

**使用提供的 AV 纜線將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接至電視，如下所示：**

1. 將帶有單一插頭的 AV 纜線的終端與 DVD 攝錄放影機的 AV 插孔連接。
2. 將帶有視訊 ( 黃色 ) 和左 ( 白色 ) / 右 ( 紅色 ) 音訊纜線的另一端與電視機連接。

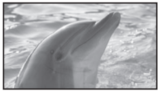
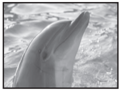
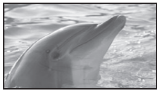
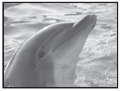
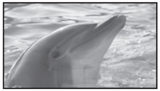
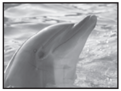
- 有關連接的更多資訊，請參閱您的電視機使用者手冊。
- 在連接之前，確保已調低電視音量：忘記調低音量可能會導致電視的喇叭發出迴聲。
- 將輸入和輸出纜線小心連接到與 DVD 攝錄放影機一起使用裝置的連接處。

### 在電視螢幕上檢視

1. 開啟電視，然後將輸入選擇器設定為連接 DVD 攝錄放影機的輸入連接處。
   - 這通常稱為「線」。參閱電視說明手冊以了解如何切換電視輸入。
2. 開啟 DVD 攝錄放影機。
   - 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關，然後開啟 LCD 螢幕。
   - 設定適當的儲存媒體。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
   - 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。➥ 第 21 頁
   - DVD 攝錄放影機中的影像將會出現在電視機螢幕上。
3. 進行播放。
   - 您可以在電視螢幕上檢視時進行播放、錄製或在選單中進行設定。

- Adjust the sound volume on TV.
- The remote control is useful when operating the DVD camcorder while viewing an image on TV screen. (SC-DX105 only)
- If only a mono audio input is available on the connected device (TV, etc.), use the audio cable with the white jack (Audio L).
- When a copy-protected movie is played back, no image will appear on TV screen.
- When "**TV Display**" is set to "**Off**," OSD(On-Screen-Display) does not appear on the TV screen. ➥page 81
- Information that the DVD camcorder is recording will appear on the TV screen: Press the **Display** (|▭|)button to switch the display status. ➥page 26
- Howling may occur when the DVD camcorder is too close to the other devices or the volume is high. Keep the DVD camcorder a reasonable distance away from the other connected devices.

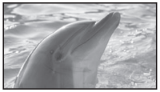
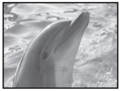
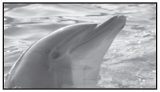
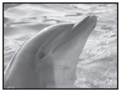
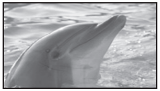
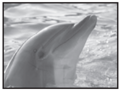
## Image display depending on TV screen ratio

| Storage | Recording ratio | Wide (16:9) TV | 4:3 TV |
|---|---|---|---|
| DISC | Movie images recorded in the 16:9 ratio **(16:9 Wide: On)** |  |  |
|  | Movie images recorded in the 4:3 ratio **(16:9 Wide: Off)** |  |  |
| CARD (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) | • Movie images<br>• Photo images |  |  |

- Refer to page 72 for "**16:9 Wide**" setting.

- 調整電視機音量。
- 在操作 DVD 攝錄放影機及檢視電視機螢幕影像時，遙控器極有幫助。(僅適用於 SC-DX105)
- 如果連接的裝置(電視等等)上只有單聲道音訊輸入可用，則使用帶有白色插頭(音訊 L)的音訊電纜線。
- 在播放受複製保護的影片時，在電視螢幕上不會出現影像。
- 在將「**TV Display**」設定為「**Off**」時，OSD(畫面顯示語言)不會出現在電視機螢幕上。➥ 第 81 頁
- DVD 攝錄放影機錄製的資訊將出現在電視螢幕上：按下**顯示**(|▭|)按鈕以切換顯示狀態。➥ 第 26 頁
- 如果 DVD 攝錄放影機太靠近其他裝置或音量很高，則可能會發出尖銳的長鳴聲。請讓 DVD 攝錄放影機與其他連接的裝置保持一定的距離。

## 影像顯示取決於電視螢幕比例

| Storage | 錄製比例 | 寬螢幕 (16:9) 電視 | 4:3 電視機 |
|---|---|---|---|
| DISC | 以 16:9 比例格式錄製的影片影像 **(16:9 Wide:On)** |  |  |
|  | 以 4:3 比例格式錄製的影片影像 **(16:9 Wide:Off)** |  |  |
| CARD（僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105） | · 影片影像<br>· 相片影像 |  |  |

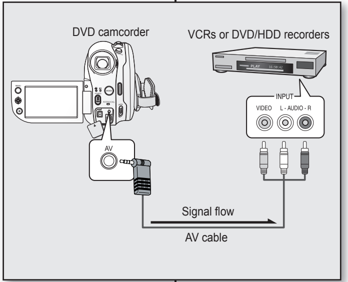
- 參閱第 72 頁以了解有關「**16:9 Wide**」設定的更多資訊。

# connecting to AV devices

## DUBBING IMAGES ON A VCR or DVD/HDD RECORDER

You can dub images played back on this DVD camcorder onto other video devices, such as VCRs or DVD/HDD recorders. Use the provided AV cable to connect the DVD camcorder to another video device as shown in the following figure:

1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn the power on, then open the LCD screen. ➥page 21
   - Set the appropriate storage media. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 30
2. Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode.
3. Use the **Joystick** to select the recorded (dubbed) image in the thumbnail index view, then press the **Joystick**.
4. Press the record button on the connected device.
   - The DVD camcorder will start playback and the recording device will dub it.



- Refer to “Editing chapter” to create a playlist by selecting desired scenes from those recorded on this DVD camcorder. ➥pages 40~46
- Audio is heard from the speaker. If the volume is too high, noise may enter the dubbed image.
- Be sure to use the AC power adaptor to power the DVD camcorder to prevent battery power from shutting off during recording on another video device.
- Be careful not to disconnect AV cable accidentally by sliding the **OPEN** switch.

# 連接至 AV 裝置

## 為 VCR 或 DVD/HDD 錄製機上的影像配音

您可以將此 DVD 攝錄放影機上播放的影像配音到其他視訊裝置，如 VCR 或 DVD/HDD 錄製機。使用隨附的 AV 纜線將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接到另一視訊裝置，如下圖所示：

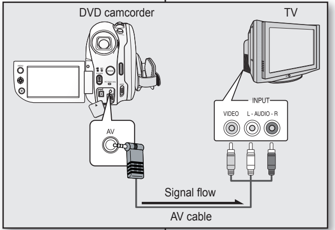
1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源，然後開啟 LCD 螢幕。➥ 第 21 頁
   - 選擇適當的儲存媒體。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁
2. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
3. 使用**搖桿**選擇在縮略圖索引視圖中錄製（已配音）的影像，然後按下**搖桿**。
4. 按下連接裝置上的錄製按鈕。
   - DVD 攝錄放影機將開始播放，並且錄製裝置將對其進行配音。

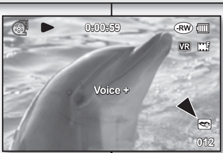
- 參閱「編輯章節」以透過從錄製在 DVD 上的那些影像選擇所需的畫面來建立播放清單。➥ 第 40~46 頁
- 從喇叭中聽到聲音。如果音量太高，噪音可能會進入配音的影像。
- 務必使用交流電源適配器為 DVD 攝錄放影機提供電源，以防在其他視訊裝置上錄製時出現電池電源關閉現象。
- 注意不要在滑動 **OPEN** 開關時意外斷開 AV 纜線。

## USING THE VOICE PLUS

- The Voice Plus function works only in the DVD camcorder play mode. ➥page 38
- This function enables you to narrate over a pre-recorded disc via the DVD camcorder's microphone.
- When you want to copy a DVD onto other AV devices (DVD recorder, VCR), you can dub your voice sound incoming from the internal microphone of your DVD camcorder to an AV device, instead of copying the audio signals on a pre-recorded disc.

1. Connect the DVD camcorder to your AV device with AV cable. ➥page 86
2. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC**. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
3. Insert the disc you wish to play back in this DVD camcorder.
4. Press the **MODE** button to set the Play mode.
5. Use the **Joystick** to select the desired image.
6. Press the **Recording start/stop** button on a point where you want during the playback.
   - Voice Plus icon (🗣) is displayed and "**Voice +**" will blink for a while.
   - Sound signals incoming from the internal microphone will be dubbed to a connected AV device, instead of copying the pre-recorded sound on a disc.
7. To cancel, press the **Recording start/stop** button again.





- Voice Plus is available only when the AV cable is connected. If a USB cable is connected, the Voice Plus function may not operate properly. (SC-DX103/DX105 only)
- If you perform Stop, Play/Pause, REW, or FF while the Voice Plus function is being executed, the Voice Plus function will be deactivated.
- When the Voice Plus function is in progress, the **MENU** button or **PHOTO** button does not work.
- The Voice Plus function does not affect the original sound on the recorded disc.
- Sound is transferred from the internal microphone on this DVD camcorder to the connected AV device, when using the Voice Plus function. Make sure the microphone is not covered or blocked in any way.
- Adjust the sound volume on the connected external device. (TV, audio system etc.)
- Feedback may occur if the DVD camcorder is placed near the speaker of an external device.
- Turn down the volume of the external device and keep the DVD camcorder a reasonable distance away.

## 使用 VOICE PLUS

- Voice Plus 功能僅在 DVD 攝錄放影機播放模式下操作。➥ 第 38 頁
- 此功能使您能夠通過 DVD 攝錄放影機的麥克風對預先錄製好的光碟進行解說。
- 如果您想將 DVD 複製到其他 AV 裝置（DVD 錄製機、VCR）上，則可使用來自 DVD 攝錄放影機的內建麥克風的傳入語音為 AV 裝置配音，而不是複製預先複製在光碟上的音訊信號。

1. 使用 AV 纜線將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接至 AV 裝置。➥ 第 86 頁
2. 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
3. 將想要播放的光碟插入此 DVD 攝錄放影機中。
4. 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定播放模式。
5. 使用**搖桿**選擇所需的影像。
6. 在播放時，您可以在想要的位置按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。
   - Voice Plus 圖示（🗣）會出現，同時「**Voice +**」會閃爍一小會。
   - 將用內建麥克風傳入的語音為所連接的 AV 裝置配音，而不是複製光碟上預先錄製好的聲音。
7. 若要取消，可再次按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕。

- Voice Plus 僅當連接了 AV 纜線後才可用。如果連接 USB 纜線，則 Voice Plus 功能就可能無法正確操作。（僅限 SC-DX103/DX105)
- 當正在執行 Voice Plus 功能時如果您執行停止、播放 / 暫停、倒帶或快進功能，則會取消激活 Voice Plus 功能。
- 當正在執行 Voice Plus 功能時，**MENU** 按鈕或 **PHOTO** 按鈕無法操作。
- Voie Plus 功能不會影響錄製的光碟上的原始音效。
- 使用 Voice Plus 功能時，音效將從 DVD 攝錄放影機上的內部麥克風傳輸到連接的 AV 裝置。確定沒有以任何方式遮住或堵塞麥克風。
- 調整連接外部裝置上的音量。（電視、音響系統等）
- 如果將 DVD 攝錄放影機放在靠近外接裝置的揚聲器，則可能會產生回聲。
- 調低外接裝置的音量，並使 DVD 攝錄放影機與其保持適當的距離。

# connecting to a PC (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

This chapter explains how to connect the camcorder to a PC using the USB cable for various functions.

✪ When connecting a USB cable to a PC, refer to the software installation instructions and PC specifications below.

## SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

### DV Media PRO

Following requirements must be satisfied to use DV Media PRO.

| | |
|---|---|
| **OS** | Windows Vista(32bit, 64bit), XP, or 2000<br>*Standard installation is recommended.<br>Operation may not be assured if the above OS has been upgrade. |
| **CPU** | Intel® Pentium® 4, 2 GHz recommended |
| **RAM** | 512 MB (2 GB and above recommended) |
| **Connector** | USB1.1/2.0 connector |
| **Display** | 1024 x 768, 24-bit color or higher |
| **Miscellaneous** | Internet Explorer 5.5 or later<br>DirectX 9.0 or later |

- USB port must be provided as standard USB 2.0 or USB 1.1. Hi-speed USB (USB 2.0) is recommended.
- USB interface is not supported on Macintosh operating systems.
- The above system requirements information is not a guarantee that the provided software will work on all personal computers meeting those requirements.
- On a slower PC than recommended, movie playback may not be smooth or video editing may take a long time.
- On a slower PC than recommended, movie playback may skip frames or operate unexpectedly.
- Intel® Pentium III™ or Pentium 4™ is a trademark of the Intel Corporation.
- Windows® is a registered trademark of the Microsoft® Corporation.
- All other brands and names are property of their respective owners.

# 連接至電腦（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

本節說明如何使用 USB 纜線將攝錄放影機連接到電腦以進行各種操作。

✪ 在將 USB 纜線連接到電腦時，請參閱以下軟體安裝和電腦規格。

## 系統需求

### DV Media PRO

必須滿足以下需求才能使用 DV Media PRO 電源導向器。

| | |
|---|---|
| **作業系統** | Windows Vista（32 位元，64 位元）、XP 或 2000<br>＊建議採用標準安裝。<br>如果上述作業系統已升級，則可能無法正常操作。 |
| **CPU** | Intel® Pentium® 4（建議 2 GHz） |
| **RAM** | 512 MB（建議 2 GB 或以上） |
| **連接器** | USB1.1/2.0 連接器 |
| **顯示器** | 1024 x 768、24 位元彩色或更高 |
| **其他** | Internet Explorer 5.5 或更新版本<br>DirectX 9.0 或更新版本 |

- 須提供標準 USB 2.0 或 USB 1.1 的 USB 連接埠。建議使用高速 USB (USB 2.0)。
- 在 Macintosh 作業系統中不支援 USB 介面。
- 以上系統需求資訊不保證隨附的軟體將能在滿足那些需求的所有個人電腦上操作。
- 在比建議慢的電腦上，影片播放可能不順暢或視訊編輯可能需要較長時間。
- 在比建議慢的電腦上，影片播放可能會跳幀或未能如常操作。
- Intel® Pentium III™ 或 Pentium 4™ 是 Intel Corporation 的商標。
- Windows® 是 Microsoft® Corporation 的註冊商標。
- 所有其他品牌和名稱是他們各自所有者的財產。

## INSTALLING DV MEDIA PRO

When you install the DV Media PRO software on your Windows computer, you can enjoy the following operations by connecting your DVD camcorder to your computer via a USB cable.

- View Movie Recordings and Photos on PC: DV Driver, DirectX9.0, Video Codec
- PC cam/USB streaming function: DV Driver, DirectX9.0, Video Codec

**Before your start!**

- Turn on your PC. Exit all other running applications.
- Insert the provided CD into the CD-ROM drive.

The setup screen appears automatically soon after the CD is inserted. If the setup screen does not appear, click on “Start” on the bottom left corner and select “Run” to display a dialog. Type “D:\autorun.exe” and then press ENTER, if your CD-ROM drive is mapped to “D:Drive”.

**Installing Driver - DV Driver and DirectX 9.0**

- DV Driver is a software driver that is required to support establishing connection to a PC.
  (If it is not installed, some functions will not be supported.)

1. Click on “DV Driver” on the Setup screen.
   - Driver software is installed automatically. Following drivers will be installed:
     - PC Camera/USB Streaming driver(Capture Driver)
2. Click on “Confirm” to finish driver installation.
3. If the “DirectX 9.0” is not installed, it is installed automatically after setting <DV Driver>.
   - After installing “DirectX 9.0,” please restart your PC.
     If ”DirectX 9.0” is installed already, there is no need to restart the PC.

**Application Installation - Video Codec**

- Click on “Video Codec” on the Setup screen.
  “Video Codec” is required to play movie files recorded by this DVD Camcorder on a PC.

## 安裝 DV MEDIA PRO

如果在 Windows 電腦上安裝了 DV Media PRO 軟體，則可用 USB 電纜線將 DVD 攝錄放影機連線到電腦來享受下列操作。

- 在 PC 上觀看影片錄製內容和照片：DV 驅動程式 - DirectX9.0 - 視訊轉碼器
- PC Camera/USB 流化功能：DV 驅動程式 - DirectX9.0 - 視訊轉碼器

**開始使用之前！**

- 開啟電腦。結束所有正在執行的其他應用程式。
- 將隨附的光碟片放入 CD-ROM 光碟機。

安裝螢幕會在放入光碟片之後立即自動顯示。若安裝螢幕沒有顯示 請按一下左下角的「 開始 」然後選取「 執行 」以顯示對話方塊。若 CD-ROM 光碟機對應到「D：光碟機 」，鍵入「D:\\autorun.exe 」並按下 ENTER。

**安裝驅動程式 - DV 驅動程式和 DirectX 9.0**

- DV Driver 是與電腦建立連接時所需的一個軟體驅動程式。
  （若未安裝，一些功能將不被支援。）

1. 在「 安裝 」螢幕上按一下「DV Driver 」。
   - 驅動程式軟體將會自動安裝。將安裝以下驅動程式：
     - PC Camera/USB 流化驅動程式（捕捉驅動程式）
2. 按一下「 確認 」完成驅動程式安裝。
3. 若尚未安裝「DirectX 9.0 」，它將在設定 <DV Driver> 之後自動安裝。
   - 「DirectX 9.0 」安裝完畢後，請重新啟動電腦。
     如果已安裝「DirectX 9.0 」，則不需要重新啟動電腦。

**應用程式安裝 - 視訊轉碼器**

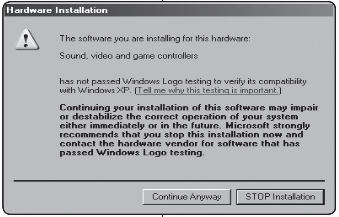
- 在「 安裝 」螢幕上，按一下「Video Codec 」。
  需要視訊轉碼器以播放透過電腦上的 DVD 攝錄放影機錄製的影片檔案。

# connecting to a PC (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

### Application Installation – Quick Time

1. Click “Quick Time” on the Setup screen.
    - QuickTime is Apple’s technology for handling movie, sound, animation, graphics, text, music, and even 360-degree virtual reality (VR) scenes.

- Please install by using the Software CD that came with this DVD camcorder. We do not guarantee compatibility for different CD versions.
- For movie playback on a PC, install software in this order: **DV Driver**, **DirectX 9.0**, **Video Codec**
- For PC Cam use, install software in this order: **DV Driver**, **DirectX 9.0**, **Video Codec**
- You have to install **DV Driver**, **DirectX 9.0**, **Video Codec** to run DV Media Pro properly.
- If a message saying “Digital Signature not found” or something similar appears, ignore the message and continue with the installation.
- During installation, if the Microsoft LOGO test warning is shown, just click ‘Continue(C).’



The software you are installing for this hardware:

Sound, video and game controllers

has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP. (Tell me why this testing is important.)

**Continuing your installation of this software may impair or destabilize the correct operation of your system either immediately or in the future. Microsoft strongly recommends that you stop this installation now and contact the hardware vendor for software that has passed Windows Logo testing.**

# 連接至電腦（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

### 應用程式安裝 – Quick Time

1. 在「安裝」螢幕上，按一下「QuickTime」。
    - QuickTime 是 Apple 研發的一項技術，用於處理影片、聲音、動畫、圖形、文字、音樂，甚至是 360 度虛擬現實 (VR) 場景。

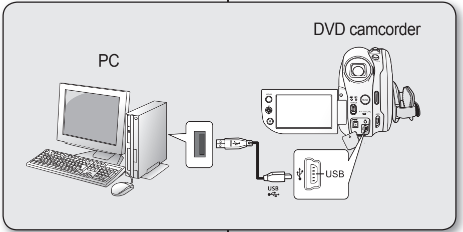
- 請使用此 DVD 攝錄放影機隨附的軟體 CD 進行安裝。我們不保證與其他不同 CD 版本的相容性。
- 要在電腦上播放影片，請按以下順序安裝軟體：**DV 驅動程式**、**DirectX 9.0**、**視訊轉碼器**
- 要用作 PC Cam，請安裝此資料夾中的軟體：**DV 驅動程式**、**DirectX 9.0**、**視訊轉碼器**
- 您必須安裝 **DV 驅動程式**、**DirectX 9.0**、**視訊轉碼器**才能正確執行 DV Media Pro。
- 若顯示「Diggital Signature not found」（找不到數位簽章）訊息或其他類似訊息，請忽略該訊息並繼續進行安裝。
- 在安裝過程中，如果出現 Microsoft LOGO 測試警告 按一下「繼續 (C)」即可。

## CONNECTING THE USB CABLE

To copy the movie files and photo files to your PC, connect your DVD camcorder to the PC with a USB cable.

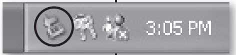
1. Set the “**USB Connect**” to “**Mass Storage.**” ➥page 81
2. Connect the DVD camcorder to the PC with a USB cable.

- Do not apply excessive force when inserting or extracting a USB cable into/from a USB jack.
- Insert a USB cable after checking the direction of its insertion is correct.
- Hi-speed USB (USB 2.0) recommended.



## Disconnecting the USB cable

After completing the data transmission, you must disconnect the cable in the following way:



1. Click the “Unplug or eject hardware” icon on the task tray.
2. Select “USB Mass Storage Device” or “USB Disk”, then click “Stop.”
3. Click “OK.”
4. Disconnect the USB cable from the DVD camcorder and PC.

- We recommend using the AC power adaptor as the power supply instead of the battery pack.
- When the USB cable is connected, turning the camcorder on or off may cause the PC to malfunction.
- If you disconnect the USB cable from the PC or the DVD camcorder while transferring, the data transmission will stop and the data may be damaged.
- If you connect the USB cable to a PC via a USB HUB or simultaneously connect the USB cable along with other USB devices, the DVD camcorder may not work properly. If this occurs, remove all USB devices from the PC and reconnect the DVD camcorder.

---

## 連接 USB 纜線

要將影片檔案和相片檔案複製到您的電腦上，可將您的 DVD 攝錄放影機連接到有 USB 纜線的電腦。

1. 將「 **USB Connect** 」設定為「 **Mass Storage** 」。➥ 第 81 頁
2. 將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接到有 USB 纜線的電腦上。

- 在向 / 從 USB 插孔中插入 / 拔出 USB 纜線時，不可過度用力。
- 在檢查以正確方向插入後，插入 USB 纜線插孔。
- 建議使用高速 USB (USB 2.0)。

## 拔下 USB 纜線

在完成資料傳輸後，您必須透過以下方式拔下纜線：

1. 按一下工作匣上的「 拔下或退出硬體 」圖示。
2. 選擇「 USB 大量儲存裝置 」或「 USB 光碟 」，然後按一下「 停止 」。
3. 按一下「 確定 」。
4. 從 DVD 攝錄放影機和電腦上拔下 USB 纜線。

- 我們建議使用交流電源適配器而非電池組作為電源供應。
- 在連接 USB 纜線時，開啟或關閉攝錄放影機可能會導致電腦發生故障。
- 如果您在傳輸期間從電腦或 DVD 攝錄放影機拔下 USB 纜線，資料傳輸便會停止，而資料也可能會損壞。
- 如果您透過 USB 集線器將 USB 纜線連接到 PC 或同時與其他 USB 裝置連接 USB 纜線，DVD 攝錄放影機可能無法正常操作。如果出現此種情況，可從電腦上卸下所有的 USB 裝置，並重新連接 DVD 攝錄放影機。

# connecting to a PC (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

## VIEWING THE CONTENTS OF STORAGE MEDIA

- You can transfer or copy the files saved on the memory card into PC using USB cable.

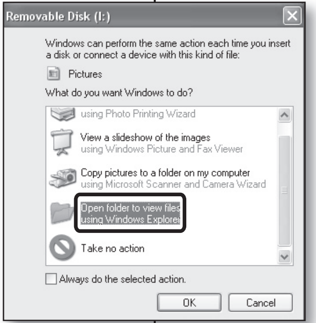
1. Slide the **POWER** switch downwards to turn on the power, then set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. ➥pages 21, 30
   - Removable disk supports only the memory card. (DVD is not supported)
2. Connect the DVD camcorder to the PC with a USB cable. ➥page 93
3. **When using Windows® XP/Vista :**
   - The “Removable Disk” window appears on the PC screen after a moment.
   - Select “Open folders to view files using Windows Explorer” and click “OK.”

   **When using Windows® 2000:**

   **a.** Double click the“My Computer” icon on the desktop.
   The “Removable Disk” icon which represents the storage media in the DVD camcorder appears in the “My Computer” window.

   **b.** Double click the“Removable Disk” icon.
4. The folders in the storage media appear.
   - Different file types are stored in different folders.

- If the “Removable Disk” window does not appear, confirm the connection (page 93) or perform the steps 1 and 2.
- If the “Removable Disk” window does not appear, click the “My Computer” icon to enter “Removable Disk.”
- In the digital camera mode, be sure that the memory card is inserted into the DVD camcorder before connecting USB cable. If no memory card or an unformatted memory card is inserted, PC will not recognize your DVD camcorder as a removable disk.


Removable Disk (I:)

Windows can perform the same action each time you insert a disk or connect a device with this kind of file:

Pictures

What do you want Windows to do?

using Photo Printing Wizard

View a slideshow of the images using Windows Picture and Fax Viewer

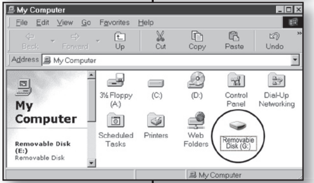
Copy pictures to a folder on my computer using Microsoft Scanner and Camera Wizard

Open folder to view files using Windows Explorer

Take no action

☐ Always do the selected action.

OK
Cancel


My Computer
File Edit View Go Favorites Help
Back Forward Up Cut Copy Paste Undo
Address My Computer
My Computer
Removable Disk (E:)
Removable Disk
3½ Floppy (A)
(C:)
(D:)
Control Panel
Dial-Up Networking
Scheduled Tasks
Printers
Web Folders
Removable Disk (G:)
My Computer

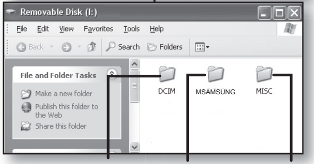

Removable Disk (I:)
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Folders
File and Folder Tasks
Make a new folder
Publish this folder to the Web
Share this folder
DCIM
MSAMSUNG
MISC

Photo images Movie images Setting data

# 連接至電腦（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

## 檢視儲存媒體的內容

- 您可以使用 USB 電纜線將儲存在記憶卡上的檔案傳送或複製到電腦。

1. 向下滑動 **POWER** 開關以開啟電源，然後將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。➥ 第 21、30 頁
   - 可移動磁碟僅支援記憶卡。（不支援 DVD）
2. 將 DVD 攝錄放影機連接到有 USB 纜線的電腦上。➥ 第 93 頁
3. **在使用 Windows® XP/Vista 時：**
   - 「可卸式磁碟」視窗稍後會出現在電腦螢幕上。
   - 選擇「使用 Windows Explorer 開啟資料夾以檢視檔案」，並按一下「確定」。

   **在使用 Windows® 2000 時：**

   **a.** 在桌面上按兩下「我的電腦」圖示。
   表示 DVD 攝錄放影機中的儲存媒體「可卸式磁碟」圖示會出現在「我的電腦」視窗中。

   **b.** 按兩下「可卸式磁碟」圖示。
4. 會出現儲存媒體中的資料夾。
   - 不同的檔案類型會儲存在不同的資料夾中。

- 如果「可卸式磁碟」視窗不出現，請確認連接（第 93 頁）或執行步驟 1 和 2。
- 如果「可卸式磁碟」視窗不出現，按一下「我的電腦」圖示以進入「可卸式磁碟」。
- 在數位相機模式中，確保在連接 USB 纜線前已將記憶卡放入 DVD 攝錄放影機。若沒有放入或放入了未格式化的記憶卡，PC 不會把 DVD 攝錄放影機識別為可卸式磁碟。

## Structure of folders and files on the storage media

- The folder and file structure for the memory card is as follows:
- Do not arbitrarily change or remove the folder or file name. It may not be playable.
- The file naming follows DCF (Design rule for Camera File System).

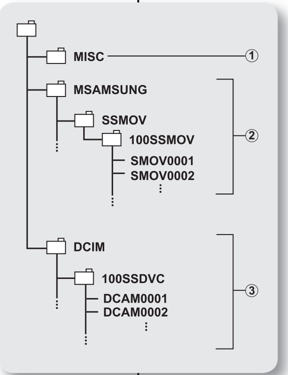


**Image configuration file ①**
This is where data for photo files such as DPOF are stored.

**Movie image file ②**
The movie images are formatted with a file name as follows: SMOV0001. The file number automatically increases when a new movie image file is created. When the number of files exceeds 99, a new folder is created and it is stored as 101SSMOV .

**Photo image file ③**
As in movie image files, the file number automatically increases when a new image file is created. When the number of photo images exceeds 99, a new folder is created.
A new folder stores files from DCAM0001. The folder name increases in the order of 100SSDVC ➝ 101SSDVC etc.

## Image format

**Movie image**

- Images are compressed in MPEG4 (Moving Picture Experts Group) format. The file extension is “.AVI.”
- The picture size is 720X480.

**Photo image**

- Photo images are compressed in JPEG (Joint Photographic Experts Group) format. The file extension is “.JPG.”
- The image size is 800x600.

- Up to 99 files are created in one folder. New folder is created when more than 99 files are created.
- You may modify the name of a file/folder stored in the memory card using a PC. This DVD camcorder may not recognize modified files.

## 儲存媒體中的資料夾與檔案結構

- 記憶卡的資料夾和檔案結構如下所示：
- 切勿隨意變更或移除資料夾或檔案名稱。可能會無法播放。
- 以 DCF（相機檔案系統設計規則）開頭命名檔案。

**影像配置檔案 ①**
它用於儲存照片檔案（如 DPOF）的資料。

**影片影像檔案 ②**
格式化具有以下檔案名稱的影片影像：SMOV0001。在建立新影片影像檔案時，會自動增加檔案編號。在檔案編號超過 99 時，請建立新資料夾，並將其儲存為 101SSMOV。

**相片影像檔案 ③**
如同在影片影像檔案中一樣，在建立新影像檔案時，會自動增加檔案編號。照片影像的數目超過 99 時，就會建立新的資料夾。新資料夾可從 DCAM0001 開始儲存檔案。資料夾名稱會按 100SSDVC ➝ 101SSDVC 等的順序增加。

## 影像格式

**影片影像**

- 影像以 MPEG4（動態視訊專家小組）格式進行壓縮。檔案副檔名為「.AVI」。
- 圖片大小為 720X480。

**相片影像**

- 相片影像以 JPEG（聯合影像專家群組）格式進行壓縮。檔案副檔名為「.JPG」。
- 影像大小為 800x600。

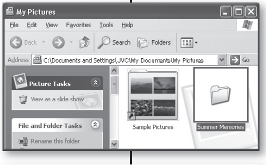
- 一個資料夾中最多可建立 99 個檔案。在建立的檔案數目超過 99 時，會建立新資料夾。
- 您可以使用電腦修改儲存在記憶卡中的檔案 / 資料夾名稱。本 DVD 攝錄放影機可能不能識別修改後的檔案。

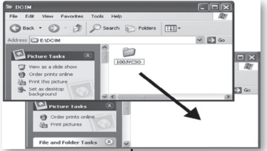
# connecting to a PC (SC-DX103/DX105 only)

## TRANSFERRING FILES FROM THE DVD CAMCORDER TO YOUR PC

You can copy the movie and photo images to your PC and play them back.

1. Execute the procedure in “Viewing the contents of storage media.” ➥pages 94~95
   - The folders in the storage media appear.
2. Create a new folder, enter the folder name, then double click it.
3. Select the folder to copy, then drag and drop it into the destination folder.
   - The folder is copied from the memory card to the PC.
   - It is not guaranteed that the files downloaded from PC are played.


My Pictures
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Folders
Address C:\Documents and Settings\JVC\My Documents\My Pictures
Go
Picture Tasks
View as a slide show
File and Folder Tasks
Rename this folder
Sample Pictures
Summer Memories


DCIM
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Folders
Address E:\DCIM
Go
Picture Tasks
View as a slide show
Order prints online
Print this picture
Set as desktop background
100JVCSO
Picture Tasks
Order prints online
Print pictures
File and Folder Tasks

# 連接至電腦（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

## 將檔案從 DVD 攝錄放影機傳輸到您的電腦

您可以將影片和相片影像複製到您的電腦，並播放這些影片和相片影像。

1. 執行「檢視儲存媒體的內容」中的程序。
   ➥ 第 94~95 頁
   - 會出現儲存媒體中的資料夾。
2. 要建立一個新資料夾，請輸入資料夾名稱，然後連按兩下。
3. 選擇要複製的資料夾，然後拖放到目的資料夾中。
   - 將資料夾從記憶卡複製到電腦中。
   - 不能保證從電腦下載的檔案可以播放。

## USING THE PC CAM FUNCTION

- This function works only in the DVD camcorder record mode. ➥page 21
- To use the PC Cam function, the **DV Driver, Video Codec** and **DirectX 9.0** programs must be installed in the PC.
- You can use this DVD camcorder as a PC camera.
- When you connect to a Web site that provides video chatting functions, you can use your DVD camcorder for such functions.
- When using this DVD camcorder for video conferencing (such as NetMeeting), voice communication may not be supported depending on the video conferencing software. In this case, connect an external microphone to the soundcard of the PC to enable voice communication.
- Using the DVD camcorder with PC Net-meeting program installed, you can participate in a video conference.
- The PC camera’s screen size (Transferred video frame rate for the PC camera function is max 12.5 fps.)
  - 640X480(VGA) pixels for USB 2.0 connection.
- If PC is connected to the DVD camcorder with a USB cable, only the **POWER** switch and **Zoom** lever can be operated.
- Run a video chatting application such as Windows Messenger and enjoy the video utilization.
- Various applications take advantage of the PC Cam function. Refer to respective product documentation for further details.

1. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **DISC.** (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30
2. Connect one end of the USB cable to the USB jack on the DVD camcorder and the other end to the USB connector on your computer.

## 使用電腦相機功能

- 此功能僅能在 DVD 攝錄放影機播放模式下操作。➥ 第 21 頁
- 若要使用 PC 相機功能，**DV 驅動程式、視訊轉碼器**和 **DirectX 9.0** 程式必須安裝在電腦上。
- 您可以將此 DVD 攝錄放影機當作 PC 相機使用。
- 當連接到提供視訊聊天功能的網站時，您可以使用 DVD 攝錄放影機的這類功能。
- 當將此 DVD 攝錄放影機用來進行視訊會議時（如 NetMeeting），支援語音通訊與否取決於視訊會議軟體。在此情況下，必須將外接式麥克風連接到電腦的音效卡以啟用語音通訊。
- 您可以使用安裝有 PC Net Meeting 程式的攝錄放影機來參加視訊會議。
- PC 相機的螢幕大小（PC 相機功能的視訊傳輸幀率最大為 12.5 fps。）
  - 用於 USB 2.0 連接的 640X480 (VGA) 像素。
- 如果 PC 以 USB 纜線連接至 DVD 攝錄放影機，只有**電源**開關及**縮放**桿可操作。
- 執行 Windows Messenger 等視訊聊天應用程式並享受視訊使用。
- 多種應用程式可利用 PC 攝像機功能。如需詳細資訊，請參閱各自的產品文件。

1. 將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **DISC**。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 30 頁
2. 將 USB 纜線的一端連接到 DVD 攝錄放影機上的 USB 插孔，將另一端連接到您電腦上的 USB 連接器。

# maintenance & additional information

## MAINTENANCE

Your DVD camcorder is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfil any guarantee obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years.

- For safekeeping of the DVD camcorder, turn off the DVD camcorder.
  - Remove the battery pack and AC power adaptor. ➥pages 16, 18
  - Remove the memory card and DVD disc. ➥pages 32, 52

### Cautions when storing

- **Do not leave the DVD camcorder in a place where the temperature is very high for a long period of time:**
  The temperature inside a closed vehicle or trunk can become very high in a hot season. If you leave the DVD camcorder in such a place, it could malfunction or the case could be damaged. Do not expose the DVD camcorder to direct sunlight or place it near a heater.
- **Do not store the DVD camcorder in a place where the humidity is high or in a dusty place:**
  Dust entering the DVD camcorder could cause malfunctions. If humidity is high, the lens could become moldy, and the DVD camcorder could become inoperative. It is recommended that you put the DVD camcorder in a box together with a small silica bag when storing it in a closet, etc.
- **Do not store the DVD camcorder in a place subject to strong magnetism or intense vibration:**
  This could cause malfunctions.
- **Detach the battery pack from the DVD camcorder and store it in a cool and dry place:**
  Leaving the battery pack attached or storing it at high temperatures could shorten its life.

### Cleaning the DVD camcorder

- **Before cleaning, turn off the DVD camcorder and remove the battery pack and AC power adaptor.**
  **To clean the exterior**
  Wipe gently with a soft dry cloth. Do not apply excessive force when cleaning, gently rub the surface.
  - Do not use benzene or a thinner to clean the camcorder. The coating of exterior could peel off or the case could deteriorate.

  **To clean the LCD screen**
  Wipe gently with a soft dry cloth. Be careful not to damage the screen.
  **To clean the lens**
  Use an optional air blower to blow out dirt and other small objects. Do not wipe the lens with cloth or your finger. If necessary, wipe gently with lens cleaning paper.
  - Mold may form if the lens is left dirty.
  - If the lens looks dimmer, turn off the DVD camcorder and leave it for about 1 hour.

# 維護和其他資訊

## 維護

您的 DVD 攝錄放影機是具有超級設計和工藝的產品，應該小心對待。下面的建議將幫助履行所有擔保義務，並讓您多年使用此產品。幫助履行所有擔保義務，並讓您多年使用此產品。

- 為了保護 DVD 攝錄放影機，請關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機。
  - 卸下電池組和交流電源適配器。➥ 第 16、18 頁
  - 取出記憶卡和 DVD 光碟。➥ 第 32、52 頁

### 儲存時的注意事項

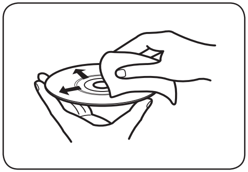
- **切勿將 DVD 攝錄放影機放在溫度過高的地方很長時間：**
  封閉的車輛或卡車在炎熱的季節會變得很熱。如果您將 DVD 攝錄放影機留在此類地方，可能會出現故障或損壞外殼。切勿將 DVD 攝錄放影機直接暴露在陽光下或放在靠近熱源的地方。
- **切勿將 DVD 攝錄放影機存放在濕度很高的地方：**
  灰塵進入 DVD 攝錄放影機可能會造成故障。如果濕度很高，鏡頭會發霉，而 DVD 攝錄放影機可能會不起作用。將 DVD 攝錄放影機存放到壁櫥中時，建議您將其與裝有矽石的袋子一起放入盒子中。
- **切勿將 DVD 攝錄放影機保存在磁性很強或強烈震動的地方：**
  這樣可能會導致發生故障。
- **從 DVD 攝錄放影機中卸下電池組，並將其存放在陰涼、乾燥的地方：**
  將連接的電池組存放在溫度很高的地方可能會縮短其壽命。很高的地方可能會縮短其壽命。

### 清潔 DVD 攝錄放影機

- **在清潔之前，關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機，然後卸下電池組和交流電源適配器。**
  **清潔外部**
  用柔軟的乾布輕輕擦拭。清潔時請勿過度用力，輕輕擦拭表面即可。
  - 切勿使用苯或稀釋劑清潔攝錄放影機。外層會脫落或外殼會被損壞。

  **清潔 LCD 螢幕**
  用柔軟的乾布輕輕擦拭。注意不要損壞螢幕。
  **要清潔鏡頭**
  使用可選購的吹風機將灰塵和其他小物件吹走。請勿用布或手指擦拭鏡頭。如有必要，使用鏡頭清潔紙輕輕擦拭。
  - 如果鏡頭很臟，可能會發霉。
  - 如果鏡頭看起來較暗，請關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機約 1 小時。

## Cleaning and handling the Disc



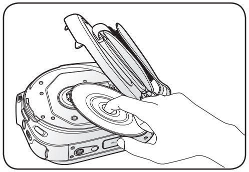
- Take care not to touch the recording side (the rainbow-colored side) of the disc with your fingers. Discs contaminated by fingerprints or foreign substances may not play properly.
- Use a soft cloth to clean the disc.
- Clean lightly from the center of a disc to the outside edge. Circling or cleaning too hard may create scratches on the disc and further cause the disc to play abnormally.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, detergent, alcohol or anti-static spray when cleaning the disc. It may cause a malfunction.
- Press the supporting holder in the center of the disc case for easy removal of the disc.
- Handle discs by the edges and the center hole to avoid fingerprints on the recording side.
- Do not bend or apply heat to the disc.
- Always store discs vertically in their plastic cases when not in use.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight, heating elements, moisture or dust.

## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

### Storage media

- **Be sure to follow the guidelines below to prevent corruption or damage to your recorded data.**
  - Do not bend or drop the storage media, or subject it to strong pressure, jolts or vibrations.
  - Do not splash the storage media with water.
  - Do not use, replace, or store the storage media in locations that are exposed to strong static electricity or electrical noise.
  - Do not turn off the camcorder power or remove the battery or AC power adaptor during recording, playback, or when otherwise accessing the storage media.
  - Do not bring the storage media near objects that have a strong magnetic field or that emit strong electromagnetic waves.
  - Do not store the storage media in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
  - Do not touch the metal parts.
- **Copy the recorded files to your PC. Samsung shall not be responsible for any lost data.**
- **A malfunction may cause the storage media to fail to operate properly. Samsung will not provide any compensation for any lost contents.**
- **Refer to pages 30~32, 52~55 for details.**

## 清潔和握住光碟



- 注意不要用手指觸摸光碟的錄製面（ 背面 )。染上手印或異物的光碟可能無法正常播放。
- 使用軟布來清潔光碟。
- 沿光碟中部向外部邊緣的方向輕輕擦拭。環繞或清潔過度可能會刮花光碟，甚至會導致光碟無法正常播放。
- 切勿在清潔光碟時使用苯、稀釋劑、清潔劑、酒精或防靜電噴霧劑，因為這樣可能會產生故障。
- 按住光碟片盒子中部的支架以輕鬆取出光碟。
- 握住光碟邊緣和中間的孔以免錄製面染上指印。
- 切勿彎曲或加熱光碟。
- 不用時，請將光碟垂直放入塑料盒中。
- 將光碟放在遠離陽光直射、熱源、潮濕或灰塵的地方。

## 其他資訊

### 儲存媒體

- **一定要執行以下步驟，以防腐蝕或損壞已錄製的資料。**
  - 切勿彎曲或掉落儲存媒體或受到重壓、撞擊或振動。
  - 切勿將水洒在儲存媒體上。
  - 切勿在具有強靜電或電噪聲的地方使用、更換或儲存儲存媒體。
  - 切勿在錄製、播放期間或在存取儲存媒體時關閉攝錄放影機電源，或拔下電源或交流電源適配器。
  - 切勿將儲存媒體放置在具有強大磁場或發出電磁波的物體附近。
  - 切勿將儲存媒體放置在高溫或濕度高的地方。
  - 切勿觸摸金屬部位。
- **將錄製的檔案複製到電腦上。Samsung 對任何資料遺失概不負責。**
- **故障可能會導致儲存媒體無法正常操作。Samsung 將將不會對任何遺失的內容予以賠償。**
- **請參閱第 30~32、52~55 頁以獲得詳細資訊。**

# maintenance & additional information

## LCD screen

- **Do not leave the DVD camcorder in a place where the temperature is very high for a long period of time:**
- **To prevent damage to the LCD screen**
  - Do not push it too hard or knock it on anything.
  - Do not place the camcorder with LCD screen on the bottom.
- **To prolong service life**, avoid rubbing it with a coarse cloth.
- **Be aware of the following phenomena for LCD screen use. They are not malfunctions.**
  - While using the camcorder, the surface around the LCD screen may heat up.
  - If you leave power on for a long time, the surface around the LCD screen becomes hot.

## Battery packs

**When not using the DVD camcorder for an extended period:**

It is recommended that you fully charge the battery pack once a year, attach it to the DVD camcorder and use it up; then remove the battery pack and store it in a cool and dry place again.

The supplied battery pack is a lithium-ion battery. Before using the supplied battery pack or an optional battery pack, be sure to read the following cautions:

- **To avoid hazards**
  - Do not burn.
  - Do not short-circuit the terminals. When transporting, carry the battery in a plastic bag.
  - Do not modify or disassemble.
  - Do not expose the battery to temperatures exceeding 60°C (140°F), as this may cause the battery to overheat, explode or catch fire.
- **To prevent damage and prolong service life**
  - Do not subject to unnecessary shock.
  - Charge in an environment where temperatures are within the tolerances shown as below.
    This is a chemical reaction-type battery - cooler temperatures impede chemical reaction, while warmer temperatures can prevent complete charging.
  - Store in a cool, dry place. Extended exposure to high temperatures will increase natural discharge and shorten service life.
  - Remove from charger or powered unit when not in use, as some machines use electric current even when switched off.

- It is recommended that only genuine **Samsung** batteries are used in this camcorder. Using generic non-**Samsung** batteries can cause damage to the internal charging circuitry.
- It is normal for the battery pack to be warm after charging, or after use.
  **Temperature range specifications**
  Charging: 10°C to 35°C (50°F to 95°F), Operation: 0°C to 40°C (32°F to 104°F), Storage: -20°C to 50°C (-4°F to 122°F)
- The lower the temperature, the longer recharging takes.
- **Refer to pages 16~19 for details.**

# 維護和其他資訊

## LCD 螢幕

- **切勿將 DVD 攝錄放影機放在溫度過高的地方很長時間：**
- **為防止損壞 LCD 螢幕**
  - 切勿用力推動或碰撞到任何物體。
  - 切勿將具有 LCD 螢幕的攝錄放影機放置在底部。
- **要延長使用壽命**，請避免使用粗布擦拭。
- **注意使用 LCD 螢幕時出現的以下現象。這並不是故障。**
  - 在使用攝錄放影機時，LCD 螢幕表面可能會變熱。
  - 如果您長時間開啟電源，LCD 螢幕表面會變熱。

## 電池組

**在長期不使用 DVD 攝錄放影機時：**

建議您對電池組每年完全充電一次，將其連接到 DVD 攝錄放影機並用盡，然後移除電池組並將其儲存在陰涼而乾燥的地方。

隨附的電池組是一種鋰離子電池。在使用隨附的電池組或可選電池組之前，一定要閱讀以下注意事項：

- **為避免危險**
  - 切勿燃燒。
  - 切勿使電極短路。在傳輸時，請將電池放於塑料袋中。
  - 切勿修改或拆開。
  - 切勿將電池暴露於溫度超過 60˚C（140˚F）的環境下，因為這可能會導致電池過熱、爆炸或著火。
- **為防止損壞和延長使用壽命**
  - 切勿受到不必要的震動。
  - 在溫度在允許範圍內的環境中充電，如下圖所示。
    這是一種化學反應類型電池，溫度較低會阻礙化學反應，而溫度較高會防止完全充電。
  - 儲存在陰涼 乾燥的地方。長期曝露於高溫下將會提高自然放電能力，並且會縮短使用壽命。
  - 在不使用時，要從充電器或供電裝置中取出電池，因為有些設備在關閉電源時仍會耗電。

- 建議在此攝錄放影機中僅使用 **Samsung** 生產的電池。使用並非由 **Samsung** 生產的電池可能會損壞內部充電電路。
- 電池組在充電或使用後發熱屬正常現象。
  **溫度範圍規格**
  充電：10°C 至 35°C（50°F 至 95°F）操作：0°C 至 40°C（32°F 至 104°F）儲存：-20°C 至 50°C（-4°F 至 122°F）
- 溫度越低，充電時間越長。
- **請參閱第 16~19 頁以獲得詳細資訊。**

## Disc-type description

| Disc Type | DVD-R (3 1/2˝) | DVD+R DL (3 1/2˝) | DVD-RW (3 1/2˝) | | DVD+RW (3 1/2 “) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mode | – | – | VR (Video Recording) | Video | – |
| **Capacity** | 1.4G | 2.6G | 1.4G | 1.4G | 1.4G |
| Formatting a new disc ①➥page 31 | Auto | Auto | ● ② | | ● ③ |
| Recording ➥pages 33~37 | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● |
| Deleting ➥page 40 | X | X | ● | X | X |
| Rewrite | X | X | ● | ● | ● |
| Playback on other DVD players ④ (Finalize⑤) ➥page 48 | ● | ● | X | ● | ● ⑥ |
| Playback on other DVD recorders ④ ➥page 48 | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● ⑥ |
| Additional recording after finalization (Unfinalize) ➥page 49 | X | X | ● | ● | – ⑥ |
| Editing ➥pages 40-46 | X | X | ● | X | X |
| Reusing a disc by formatting ⑦ (Format) ➥page 50 | X | X | ● | ● | ● |

● : possible, X : not possible, – : not needed

① You must format a new disc before recording on it.
② When loading a DVD-RW disc, you must format it in Video or VR mode.
③ When loading a DVD+RW disc, you must format it.
④ We cannot guarantee that you will be able to play back in all other manufacturer’s DVD camcorders, DVD players/recorders, or PC’s. For compatibility information, please refer to the manual of the device you wish to play back on.
⑤ Discs must be finalized before it can be played on standard DVD players/recorders.
Refer to page 8 for finalized disc compatibility.
⑥ You can play back DVD+RW discs on DVD players/recorders without finalizing them.
⑦ When formatting a recorded disc, the data recorded on the disc is deleted and disc capacity is restored, enabling you to re-use the disc.

## 光碟類型說明

| 光碟類型 | DVD-R (3 1/2˝) | DVD+R DL (3 1/2˝) | DVD-RW (3 1/2˝) | | DVD+RW (3 1/2 “) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 模式 | – | – | VR (視訊錄製) | 視訊 | – |
| **容量** | 1.4G | 2.6G | 1.4G | 1.4G | 1.4G |
| 格式化 新光碟 ①➥ 第 31 頁 | Auto | Auto | ● ② | | ● ③ |
| 錄製 ➥ 第 33~37 頁 | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● |
| 刪除 ➥ 第 40 頁 | X | X | ● | X | X |
| 重新寫入 | X | X | ● | ● | ● |
| 在其他 DVD 播放機上播放 ④ ( 終結 ⑤) ➥ 第 48 頁 | ● | ● | X | ● | ● ⑥ |
| 在其他 DVD 錄製機上播放 ④ ➥ 第 48 頁 | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● ⑥ |
| 終結後的其他錄製 ( 取消終結 ) ➥ 第 49 頁 | X | X | ● | ● | – ⑥ |
| 編輯 ➥ 第 40-46 頁 | X | X | ● | X | X |
| 透過格式化重新使用光碟 ⑦( 格式化 ) ➥ 第 50 頁 | X | X | ● | ● | ● |

●：可能，X：不可能，–：不需要

① 在新光碟上錄製時，您必須對其進行格式化。
② 在載入 DVD-RW 光碟時，您必須在視訊或 VR 模式下對其進行格式化。
③ 在載入 DVD+RW 光碟時，您必須對其進行格式化。
④ 我們不能保證您將能在所有其他製造商提供 DVD 攝錄放影機、DVD 播放機 / 錄製機或電腦中播放。有關相容性的資訊，請參閱您想在其上播放的裝置手冊。
⑤ 必須終結光碟 ( 在標準 DVD 播放機 / 錄製機上播放之前 )。
請參閱第 8 頁以獲得有關終結光碟相容性的資訊。
⑥ 您無需終結 DVD+RW 光碟便可在 DVD 播放機 / 錄製機上播放。
⑦ 在格式化錄製光碟時，會刪除錄製在光碟上的資料，並會恢復光碟容量，以讓您重新使用光碟。

# maintenance & additional information

## USING YOUR DVD CAMCORDER ABROAD

- **Each country or region has its own electric and color systems.**
- **Before using your DVD camcorder abroad, check the following items.**
- Power sources

  The provided AC power adaptor features automatic voltage selection in the AC range from 100 V to 240 V.

  You can use your camcorder in any countries/regions using the AC power adaptor supplied with your camcorder within the AC 100 V to 240 V, 50/60 Hz range. Use a commercially available AC plug adaptor, if necessary, depending on the design of the wall outlet.
- On TV color systems

  Your camcorder is an **NTSC**-system-based camcorder.

  If you want to view your recordings on a TV or to copy it to an external device, it must be an **NTSC**-system-based TV or an external device and have the appropriate Audio/Video jacks. Otherwise, you may need to use a separate video format transcoder (NTSC-PAL format converter).

- **NTSC-compatible countries/regions**

  Bahamas, Canada, Central America, Japan, Korea, Mexico, Philippines, Taiwan, United States of America, etc.
- **PAL-compatible countries/regions**

  Australia, Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, China, CIS, Czech Republic, Denmark, Egypt, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Great Britain, Netherlands, Hong Kong, Hungary, India, Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Libya, Malaysia, Mauritius, Norway, Romania, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, Slovak Republic, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Syria, Thailand, Tunisia, etc.

# 維護和其他資訊

## 在國外使用您的 DVD 攝錄放影機

- **每個國家或地區都有自己的電源和彩色系統。**
- **在國外使用 DVD 攝錄放影機之前，請檢查以下各項。**
- 電源

  提供的交流電源適配器具有從 100 伏至 240 伏之間進行自動選擇電壓的功能。

  透過在交流電 100 伏到 240 伏、50/60 赫茲範圍內使用攝錄放影機隨附的交流電源適配器，您可以在任何國家 / 地區使用攝錄放影機。根據牆上插座設計，如有必要，請使用市面上提供的交流電源適配器。
- 關於電視彩色系統

  您的攝錄放影機就基於 **NTSC** 系統的攝錄放影機。

  如果您想在電視上檢視錄製內容或將其複製到外部裝置，必須使用基於 **NTSC** 系統的電視或外部裝置，並且必須具有適當的音訊 / 視訊插孔。否則，您可能需要使用單獨購買的視訊格式轉碼器（NTSC-PAL 格式轉換器）。

- **NTSC 相容的國家 / 地區**

  巴哈馬、加拿大、中美洲、日本、韓國、墨西哥、菲律賓、台灣、美國等等。
- **PAL 相容的國家 / 地區**

  澳洲、奧地利、比利時、保加利亞、中國、CIS 國家、捷克、丹麥、埃及、芬蘭、法國、德國、希臘、英國、荷蘭、香港、匈牙利、印度、伊朗、伊拉克、科威特、利比亞、馬來西亞、模里西斯、挪威、羅馬尼亞、沙烏地阿拉伯、新加坡、斯洛伐克、西班牙、瑞典、瑞士、敘利亞、泰國、突尼西亞，等等。

# troubleshooting

## TROUBLESHOOTING

Before contacting a Samsung authorized service center, perform the following simple checks.
They may save you the time and expense of an unnecessary call.

## Warning indicators and messages

### Overall

| Message | Icon | Informs that... | Action |
|---|---|---|---|
| Low Battery | 🔋 | The battery pack is almost discharged. | Replace with a charged battery or connect the AC power adaptor. (If the AC power adaptor is connected when "Low Battery" is displayed, the power is turned off and the charging starts.) |
| Cover is opened | | Cover is opened. | Close the cover. |

### Discs

| Message | Icon | Informs that... | Action |
|---|---|---|---|
| Insert Disc | 💿 | There is no disc in DVD camcorder. | Insert a disc. |
| Disc Full | 💿 | There is not enough disc space. | Change to a new disc. Erase recorded image. |
| Finalized Disc | 💿 | The disc is finalized. | To record on a DVD-RW/+RW disc, unfinalize it. |
| Not Supported Disc | ⚠ | The disc is not recognized in the DVD camcorder.<br>The disc is finalized in the camcorders manufactured by other companies. | The supported discs are DVD-R, DVD+R DL, DVD-RW and DVD+RW. Use a new disc. |
| Disc Error | ⚠ | File system does not match to the disc.<br>Disc is formatted in the PC. | Reformat the disc for –RW/+RW.<br>There should be no scratches on the surface of the disc. |
| Write Error | ⚠<br>◀⚠ | Your disc or memory card has some problems in writing data.<br>Disc is shocked while movies is being recorded onto the disc. | To recover previous data in your disc or memory card, turn the power off and on. After recovering data, the system will be switched to **STBY** mode. If it fails to recover data, **"Disc Error"** or **"Card Error"** appear. |

# 故障排除

## 故障排除

在聯絡 Samsung 授權的維修中心之前，請執行下列簡單檢查。
這將可節省不必要的撥電時間和費用。

## 警告指示器和訊息

### 整體

| 訊息 | 圖示 | 表示⋯ | 措施 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Low Battery | 🔋 | 電池組幾乎完全放電。 | 更換充電電池或連接交流電源適配器。( 如果在顯示「Low Battery」時連接交流電源適配器，會關閉電源，同時會開始充電。) |
| Cover is opened | | 打開護蓋。 | 合上護蓋。 |

### 光碟

| 訊息 | 圖示 | 表示⋯ | 措施 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Insert Disc | 💿 | DVD 攝錄放影機中沒有光碟。 | 插入光碟。 |
| Disc Full | 💿 | 沒有足夠的光碟空間。 | 更換新的光碟。刪除已錄製的影像。 |
| Finalized Disc | 💿 | 光碟已終結。 | 要在 DVD-RW/+RW 光碟上錄製，可對其取消終結。 |
| Not Supported Disc | ⚠ | 光碟無法在 DVD 攝錄放影機中識別。在其他公司製造的攝錄放影機中終結光碟。 | 支援的光碟有：DVD-R、DVD+R DL、DVD-RW 和 DVD+RW。使用新光碟。 |
| Disc Error | ⚠ | 檔案系統與光碟不相符。<br>在電腦中格式化光碟。 | 重新格式化 -RW/+RW 光碟。<br>不可刮擦光碟表面。 |
| Write Error | ⚠<br>◀⚠ | 在寫入資料時，您的光碟或記憶卡出現了一些問題。<br>在將影片錄製到光碟時，光碟會振動。 | 要恢復光碟或記憶卡中先前的資料，請關閉電源，然後重新開啟電源。在恢復資料後，系統將被切換到 **STBY** 模式。如果無法恢復資料，會出現「**Disc Error**」或「**Card Error**」。 |

# maintenance & additional information

| Message | Icon | Informs that... | Action |
|---|---|---|---|
| Recovering Data... Don't power off | | While recording, if the power is suddenly turned off, file writing is not properly done. When you turn on the power, you will see the message, **"Recovering Data... Don't power off."** | If the DVD camcorder is turned off while recording, turn it on again with the disc or memory card inserted in it: Repair of the disc or memory card will be executed automatically.<br>Do not turn the DVD camcorder off when data recovery is in progress. Do the followings so as not to damage the data or the storage media (disc or memory card) itself:<br>- Connect the AC power adaptor<br>- Do not remove the disc or memory card<br>- Do not remove the battery pack<br>- Do not subject the DVD camcorder to severe vibrations or impact.<br>The data recovery completes within a few minutes but sometimes it may take more time.<br>- The data recovery may not be successful depending on when the power is down or recordings from the DVD camcorders or recorders are present on the storage media. |

## Memory cards (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)

| Message | Icon | Informs that... | Action |
|---|---|---|---|
| Insert Card | ⊘ | There is no memory card inserted in the card slot. | Insert a memory card.<br>Use another storage media. ➥pages 30 |
| Card Full | ● | There is no enough space to record in the memory card. | Delete unnecessary files on the memory card.<br>Use another storage media. ➥page 30 |
| Not Supported Card | ⚠ | The memory card is not supported in this camcorder. | Change the memory card that we recommended.➥pages 52~53 |
| Card Error | ⚠ | The memory card or the controller are corrupted. | The memory card could be damaged.<br>Try with another memory card. |
| Low speed card | ⚠ | The DVD camcorder cannot record with a low speed card. | Use the recommended memory card.<br>➥pages 52~53 |
| Not formatted! | ⚠ | File system does not match the memory card. Memory card is formatted in the PC. The memory card needs to be formatted. | Format the memory card. ➥page 78 |
| Card Locked | 🔒 | The memory card is record protected. | Release the write-protect tab on the memory card. |

# 維護和其他資訊

| 訊息 | 圖示 | 表示⋯ | 措施 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Recovering Data... Don't power off | | 在錄製時，如果突然關閉電源，就無法正常完成檔案寫入。在開啟電源時，您將看到以下訊息，「**Recovering Data...Don't power off**」。 | 如果在錄製時關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機，則在光碟或記憶卡插入其中的情況下再次打開它：光碟或記憶卡的修復將自動執行。<br>正在進行資料恢複時，不要關閉 DVD 攝錄放影機。執行以下操作以免損壞資料或儲存媒體（光碟或記憶卡）:<br>- 連接交流電源適配器<br>- 切勿取出光碟或記憶卡<br>- 切勿取出電池組<br>- 切勿使 DVD 攝錄放影機受到嚴重的振動或撞擊。<br>資料恢複在幾分鍾之內就可以完成，但有時需要稍長一些時間。<br>- 當電源關閉或將 DVD 攝錄放影機或錄製機中的錄製內容儲存在儲存媒體上時，資料恢復可能會失敗。 |

## 記憶卡（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

| 訊息 | 圖示 | 表示⋯ | 措施 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Insert Card | ⊘ | 未向卡插槽中插入記憶卡。 | 插入記憶卡。<br>使用另一個儲存媒體。➥ 第 30 頁 |
| Card Full | ● | 記憶卡上沒有可供錄製的足夠空間。 | 刪除記憶卡上不必要的檔案。<br>使用另一個儲存媒體。➥ 第 30 頁 |
| Not Supported Card | ⚠ | 記憶卡在此攝錄放影機中不受支援。 | 變更我們建議的記憶卡。<br>➥ 第 52~53 頁 |
| Card Error | ⚠ | 記憶卡或控制器損毀。 | 記憶卡可能會被損毀。<br>嘗試使用其他記憶卡。 |
| Low speed card | ⚠ | DVD 攝錄放影機無法以低速卡進行錄製。 | 使用建議的記憶卡。➥ 第 52~53 頁 |
| Not formatted! | ⚠ | 檔案系統與記憶卡不相符。在電腦中格式化記憶卡。<br>需要格式化記憶卡。 | 格式化記憶卡。➥ 第 78 頁 |
| Card Locked | 🔒 | 記憶卡具有錄製保護。 | 解除記憶卡上的寫入保護標籤。 |

## PictBridge (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)

| Message | Informs that... | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Read Error | There are some problems with file. | Release the protection. |
| Ink Error | There are some problems with the ink cartridge. | • Check the ink cartridge.<br>• Replace the ink cartridge. |
| Paper Error | There are some problems with the paper. | Check the paper in the printer. If there is no paper, inset the paper. |
| Print Error | There are some problems with the printer. | Turn the printer power off and on. |

Refer also to the user manual for the printer to be used.

CAUTION

**When there is dew condensation, put the camcorder aside for a while before using.**

- What is dew condensation?
  Dew condensation happens when a DVD camcorder is moved to a place where there is a significant temperature difference from the previous place. The dew condenses on the external or internal lenses of the DVD camcorder and on the reflection lens and the surface of the disc which are related to playback. When this happens, you temporarily may not use the record or play functions of the DVD camcorder. Also, using the camcorder while there is condensation may cause malfunction or damage.
- What can I do?
  Turn the power off and detach the battery pack, and leave it in a dry area for 1~2 hours before using it.
- When does the dew condensation occur?
  When the device is relocated to a place with a higher temperature than the previous location, or when using it in a hot area suddenly, it will cause condensation.
  - When recording outside in cold weather during the winter and then using it in indoors.
  - When recording outside in hot weather after being indoors or inside a car where the AC was running.

**Note before sending your camcorder for repair.**

- If these instructions do not solve your problem, contact your nearest Samsung authorized service center.
- Depending on the problem, the internal memory may need to be initialized or replaced and the data will be deleted.
  Be sure to back up the data on your PC before sending your camcorder to repair.
  Samsung cannot guarantee any loss of your data.

## PictBridge（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）

| 訊息 | 表示… | 措施 |
|---|---|---|
| Read Error | 檔案存在一些問題。 | 解除保護。 |
| Ink Error | 墨水盒存在一些問題。 | ・ 檢查墨水盒。<br>・ 更換墨盒。 |
| Paper Error | 紙張存在一些問題。 | 檢查印表機中的紙張。如果沒有紙張，請裝入紙張。 |
| Print Error | 印表機存在一些問題。 | 關閉和開啟印表機。 |

另請參閱要使用印表機的使用者手冊 。

注意

**如果存在露水冷凝現象，可在使用前將攝錄放影機閒置一會。**

- 什麼是露水冷凝？
  如果將 DVD 攝錄放影機移至較先前地方具有很大溫差的地方，就會出現露水冷凝現象。DVD 攝錄放影機鏡頭外部或內部、反光鏡和光碟播放面會出現露水冷凝現象。如果發生此種情況，您可能暫時無法使用 DVD 攝錄放影機的錄製或播放功能。而且，在冷凝時使用攝錄放影機可能會發生故障或損壞情況。
- 我該怎樣辦？
  關閉電源並拆開電池組，然後使用前在乾燥的地方放置 1~2 個小時。
- 當會發生露水冷凝現象？
  當將裝置重新放置在較先前地區溫度更高的地方，或突然在高溫地區使用時，將會發生冷凝現象。
  - 先在冬季的寒冷天氣中進行戶外錄製，然後在戶內使用時。
  - 先在戶外或使用交流電源的車內錄製，然後在高溫天氣中進行戶外錄製時。

**將攝錄放影機送去維修之前的注意事項。**

- 如果這些指示不能解決問題，請聯絡就近的 Samsung 授權維修中心。
- 視問題而定，可能需要初始化或更換內部記憶體，並且資料將會被刪除。
  在將攝錄放影機送去維修之前，請務必備份電腦上的資料。
  Samsung 不能保證任何資料的丟失情況。

# troubleshooting

✪ If you encounter any problem using your camcorder, check the following before requesting service.
If these instructions do not solve your problem, contact your nearest Samsung authorized service center.

## Symptoms and solutions

### Power

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| The power turns off automatically. | • Is "**Auto Power Off**" set to "**6Min**"? If no button is pressed for about 6 minutes in STBY mode, the DVD camcorder is automatically turned off. To disable this option, Set "**Auto Power Off**" to "**Off**." ➥page 80<br>• The battery pack is almost exhausted. Charge the battery pack or replace it with a charged one. Use the AC power adaptor. |
| Power cannot be turned off. | • Remove the battery pack or unplug AC power adaptor, and connect the power supply to the camcorder again before turning it on. |
| The battery pack is quickly discharged. | • The ambient temperature is too low.<br>• The battery pack is not fully charged. Charge the battery pack again.<br>• The battery pack reached its lifespan and cannot be recharged. Use another battery pack. |

### Displays

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| The LCD is turned off. | • Keep away from magnetic materials. When magnetic material is near the left side of the DVD camcorder, the LCD may be turned off but it is not a malfunction. |
| The image in the Viewfinder is blurred. | • The Viewfinder lens has not been adjusted.<br>• Adjust the Viewfinder control lever until the indicators displayed on the Viewfinder come into sharp focus. |
| The screen of TV or LCD displays distorted images or has stripes at the top/ bottom or utmost left/right | • It can occur when recording or viewing a 16:9-ratio image on a 4:3-ratio TV, or vice versa. For more details, see the display specification. |
| Unknown indicator appears on the LCD screen. | • A warning indicator or message appears on the screen. ➥pages 104-106 |
| An afterimage remains on the LCD screen. | • This occurs if you disconnect the AC power adaptor or remove the battery pack before turning the power off |
| The LCD screen is black with indicators appeared only. | • Check the lens cover. Open the lens cover if closed. |

# 故障排除

✪ 如果在使用攝錄放影機時遇到任何問題，請在要求維修前檢查以下方面。
如果這些指示不能解決問題，請聯絡就近的 Samsung 授權維修中心。

## 症狀和解決方案

### 電源

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 電源自動關閉。 | ・ 是否將「 **Auto Power Off** 」設定為「 **6Min** 」？如果在約 6 分鐘內未按下任何按鈕，DVD 攝錄放影機將會自動關閉。要停用此選項，可將「 **Auto Power Off** 」設定為「 **Off**. 」➥ 第 80 頁<br>・ 電池組電量幾乎耗盡。給電池組充電或更換已充好電的電池組。使用交流電源適配器。 |
| 無法關閉電源。 | ・ 取出電池組或拔下交流電源適配器後，為攝錄放影機重新提供電源以再次開啟。 |
| 電池組會快速放電。 | ・ 週圍環境的溫度太低。<br>・ 電池組未完全充電。再次對電池組充電。<br>・ 電池組達到其使用壽命，且無法重新充電。使用其他電池組。 |

### 顯示

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| LCD 已關閉。 | ・ 保存在遠離磁性物質的地方。在磁性物質接近 DVD 攝錄放影機左側時，LCD 可能會關閉，但這不是故障。 |
| 觀景窗中的影像模糊。 | ・ 觀景窗鏡頭尚未調整。<br>・ 調整觀景窗控制桿，直到觀景窗中的指示器出現清晰的對焦。 |
| 電視或 LCD 螢幕顯示失真影像或在頂 / 底部或最左 / 右邊出現條紋 | ・ 在 4:3 比率的電視上錄製或檢視 16:9 比率的影像時，可能會發生此類情況，反之亦然。有關更多詳情，請參閱顯示規格。 |
| 不明指示器會出現在 LCD 螢幕上。 | ・ 警告指示器或訊息會出現在螢幕上。<br>➥ 第 104-106 |
| 殘像仍然會出現在 LCD 螢幕上。 | ・ 如果拔下交流電源適配器或在未關閉電源前取出電池組，會發生此種情況 |
| LCD 螢幕呈現黑色，僅出現指示燈。 | ・ 檢查透鏡蓋。如果鏡頭蓋關閉，請開啟。 |

## Discs

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| The disc cannot be removed. | • Your camcorder is damp and moist inside (condensation). Or the internal temperature of your camcorder is unusually high. Turn off your camcorder and leave it for about 1 hour in a cool and dry place. ➥page 105<br>• Finalizing is interrupted by turning off your camcorder. Turn on your camcorder and remove the disc only when the finalization is completed. ➥pages 47-48 |
| Disc is not recognized and the disc cover opens. | • The disc is damaged. Replace with a new disc. |

## Memory cards (SC-DX103/ DX105 only)

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| Digital camera mode are not operable. | • Insert a memory card into your camcorder properly. ➥page 52<br>• If you use a memory card formatted on a computer, format it again directly on your camcorder. ➥page 78 |
| Image cannot be deleted. | • Release the lock on the write-protect tab of the memory card (SD card), if any. ➥page 53<br>• You cannot delete images protected by another device. Release the protection of the image on the device. |
| You cannot format the memory card. | • Release the lock on the write-protect tab of the memory card (SD card), if any. ➥page 53<br>• The memory card is not supported on your camcorder or card has some problems. |
| The data file name is not indicated correctly. | • The file may be corrupted.<br>• The file format is not supported by your DVD camcorder.<br>• Only the file name is displayed if the directory structure complies with the international standard. |

## Recording

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| Pressing the **Recording start/stop** button does not start recording. | • Press the **MODE** button to set the STBY mode. (🎥 ).<br>• There is not enough free space to record on the storage media.<br>• Check if memory card is not inserted or write-protect tab is set to lock. (SC-DX103/ DX105 only) ➥page 53<br>• Your camcorder is damp and moist inside (condensation). Turn off your camcorder and leave it for about 1 hour in a cool, dry place. ➥page 105 |

## 光碟

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 無法取出光碟。 | · 您的攝錄放影機內部很潮濕（冷凝）。或者，攝錄放影機內部溫度異常高。關閉攝錄放影機，並讓其在陰涼、乾燥的地方冷卻 1 小時。➥ 第 105 頁<br>· 關閉攝錄放影機會中斷終結。開啟攝錄放影機，並僅在完成終結時取出光碟。➥ 第 47-48 頁 |
| 無法識別光碟，並且會打開光碟護蓋。 | · 光碟會損毀。請更換新的光碟。 |

## 記憶卡（僅適用於 SC-DX103/ DX105）

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 無法操作數位相機模式。 | · 將記憶卡正確插入攝錄放影機。 第 52 頁<br>· 如果使用在電腦上已格式化了的記憶卡，則直接在您的攝錄放影機上再次將其格式化。➥ 第 78 頁 |
| 無法刪除影像。 | · 如果存在的話，解除記憶卡（SD 卡）寫入保護標籤的鎖定。➥ 第 53 頁<br>· 您無法刪除受另一裝置保護的影像。釋放裝置上的影像保護按鈕。 |
| 無法格式化記憶卡。 | · 如果存在的話，解除記憶卡（SD 卡）寫入保護標籤的鎖定。➥ 第 53 頁<br>· 攝錄放影機不支援記憶卡或卡出現某些故障 。 |
| 資料檔案名稱標示不正確。 | · 檔案可能被損毀。<br>· DVD 攝錄放影機不支援檔案格式。<br>· 僅顯示檔案名稱（如果目錄結構符合國際標準）。 |

## 錄製

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕不會開始錄製。 | · 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定 STBY 模式。(🎥 ).<br>· 儲存媒體上的可用空間不足，不能進行錄製。<br>· 檢查記憶卡是否已插入或寫入保護標籤是否設定為鎖定。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105）➥ 第 53 頁<br>· 您的攝錄放影機內部很潮濕（冷凝）。關閉攝錄放影機並讓其在陰涼、乾燥的地方冷卻 1 小時。➥ 第 105 頁 |

# troubleshooting

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| The actual recording time is less than the estimated recording time. | • The estimated recording time is calculated by some references.<br>• When you record an object that moves fast, the actual recording time may be shortened. |
| The recording stops automatically. | • The internal temperature of your camcorder is extremely low. Keep it turned on and wait until it warms up.<br>• If you make a frequent recording or deletion of files, the performance of the storage media will deteriorate. In this case, format the storage media again.<br>• If you use the memory card with low writing speed, the DVD camcorder automatically stops recording the movie images then the corresponding message appears on the LCD screen. |
| When recording a subject illuminated by bright light, vertical line appears. | • This is not a malfunction. |
| When the screen is exposed to direct sunlight during recording, the screen becomes red or black for an instant. | • This is not a malfunction. |
| During recording, the date/time does not display. | • "**Date/Time**" is set to "**Off**." Set the "**Date/Time**" to on. ➥page 29 |
| You cannot record a photo image.<br>(SC-DX103/DX105 only) | • Set your camcorder to the digital camera record mode. ➥page 30<br>• Release the lock on the write-protection tab of the memory card if any.<br>• The memory card is full. Use a new memory card or format the memory card. ➥pages 52-54<br>Or remove unnecessary images. ➥page 61<br>• You cannot take photo images on a disc. Set the **Storage mode** switch to **CARD**. |
| There is a time difference between the point where you press **Recording start/stop** button and the point where the recorded movie starts/stops. | • On your camcorder, there may be a slight time delay between the point when you press **Recording start/stop** button and the actual point where the recorded movie starts/stops. This is not an error. |
| The aspect ratio (16:9/4:3) of a movie cannot be changed. | • The aspect ratio of a movie at 16:9 cannot be changed to 4:3. |

---

# 故障排除

| 症狀 | 説明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 實際錄製時間少於估計錄製時間。 | · 透過一些參考來計算估計的錄製時間。<br>· 在您錄製快速移動的物體時，實際錄製時間可能會縮短。 |
| 錄製自動停止。 | · 攝錄放影機內部溫度非常低。使其保持開啟狀態直到溫度升高為止。<br>· 如果頻繁錄製或刪除檔案，將會降低儲存媒體的效能。在此情況下，請再次格式化儲存媒體。<br>· 如果您使用寫入速度較慢的記憶卡，則 DVD 攝錄放影機會自動停止錄製影片影像，然後會在 LCD 螢幕上出現相應的訊息。 |
| 在明亮的燈光下錄製照亮的主體時，會出現垂直線。 | · 這不是故障。 |
| 在錄製期間，螢幕在陽光直射下瞬間變為紅色或黑色。 | · 這不是故障。 |
| 在錄製過程中，不能顯示日期 / 時間。 | · 「**Date/Time**」被設為「**Off**」。將「**Date/Time**」設定為開啟。➥ 第 29 頁 |
| 您無法錄製相片影像。（僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105） | · 將您的攝錄放影機設定為數位相機錄製模式。➥ 第 30 頁<br>· 如果存在的話，解除記憶卡寫入保護標籤的鎖定。<br>· 記憶卡已滿。使用新記憶卡或格式化記憶卡。➥ 第 52-54 頁<br>或移除不必要的影像。➥ 第 61 頁<br>· 您無法將相片影像拍攝到光碟上。將**儲存模式**開關設定為 **CARD**。 |
| 按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕的那一刻與影片開始 / 停止的那一刻存在時間差異。 | · 在攝錄放影上，按下**錄製開始 / 停止**按鈕的那一刻與影片開始 / 停止的那一刻存在較短的時間差異。這並非是錯誤。 |
| 無法變更影片畫面比例 (16:9/4:3)。 | · 以 16:9 的影片畫面比例無法變更為 4:3。 |

## Adjusting the image during recording

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| Focus does not adjust automatically. | • Set "**Focus**" to "**Auto**." ➥page 70<br>• The recording conditions are not suitable for auto focus. Adjust the focus manually. ➥page 70<br>• The lens is dusty on the surface. Clear the lens and check the focus. |
| The image appears too bright or flickering, or changes in color. | • This may occur when you make a recording under a fluorescent, sodium or mercury lamp. Cancel "**Scene Mode (AE)**" to avoid or minimize the phenomena. ➥page 65 |
| Image's color balance is not natural. | • White balance adjustment is required. Adjust to the proper "**White Balance**."➥page 66 |

## Playback on your DVD camcorder

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| Using the playback (Play/Pause) function does not start playing. | • Press the **MODE** button to set to the Play mode.<br>• Images recorded using another device may not be played on your DVD camcorder.<br>• Select a proper storage media. (SC-DX103/DX105 only) ➥page 30<br>• Check out the memory card compatibility. ➥page 52~54 |
| The Skip or Search function does not work properly. | • If the temperature inside the camcorder is too high, it may not function properly. Turn the camcorder off, and turn it on again a little later. |

## Connecting/Dubbing with other devices (TV, DVD players, etc)

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| You cannot view the image or hear the sound from the connected device. | • Connect the audio of the audio/video cable to your camcorder or to the connected device (TV, DVD recorder, etc). (Red color- right, White color- left)<br>• The connection cable (AV cable) is not connected properly. Make sure that the connection cable is connected to the proper jack. ➥pages 86~87 |
| The image appears distorted on a 4:3 TV. | • This happens when viewing an image recorded in 16:9 wide mode on a 4:3 TV. If you want to display properly on your TV, check out your TV type and set the proper screen mode ("16:9 Wide") before recording. ➥page 72 |
| You cannot dub correctly using the AV cable. | • The AV cable is not connected properly. Make sure that the AV cable is connected to the proper jack, i.e. to the input jack of the device used for dubbing images from your camcorder. ➥page 88 |

## 在錄製過程中調整影像

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 無法自動調整焦距。 | · 將「**Focus**」設定為「**Auto**」。➥ 第 70 頁<br>· 錄製條件不適合自動對焦。手動調整焦距。➥ 第 70 頁<br>· 鏡頭表面有許多灰塵。清除鏡頭上的水珠，然後檢查對焦。 |
| 影像顯示太亮或閃爍，或顏色變更。 | · 在螢光燈、鈉光燈或水銀燈下進行錄製時可能會出現此現象。取消「**Scene Mode (AE)**」以避免或減輕此現象。➥ 第 65 頁 |
| 影像的色彩平衡不太自然。 | · 需要進行白平衡調整。調整到適當的「**White Balance**」位置。➥ 第 66 頁 |

## 在 DVD 攝錄放影機上播放

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 使用播放（播放 / 暫停）功能卻無法開始播放。 | · 按下 **MODE** 按鈕以設定為播放模式。<br>· 使用其他裝置錄製的影像檔案可能無法在您的 HD 攝錄放影機上播放。<br>· 選擇適當的儲存媒體。( 僅適用於 SC-DX103/DX105 ) ➥ 第 30 頁<br>· 檢查記憶卡相容性。➥ 第 52~54 頁 |
| 跳過或搜尋功能無法正常操作。 | · 如果攝錄放影機內部溫度過高，則無法正常操作。關閉攝錄放影機，等待片刻後再開啟。 |

## 使用其他裝置（電視、DVD 播放機等）連接 / 配音

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 無法從連接的裝置上觀看影像或聽到聲音。 | · 將音訊 / 視訊纜線的音訊線路連接至攝錄放影機或已連接的裝置 ( 電視、DVD 錄製機等 ) 上。( 紅色 – 右，白色 – 左 )<br>· 未正確連接連接纜線 ( AV 纜線 )。確保將連接纜線連接至適當的插孔。➥ 第 86~87 |
| 在 4:3 電視上影像顯示失真。 | · 在 4:3 電視上以 16:9 寬螢幕模式觀看錄製的影像時會出現此現象。如果想在電視上得到適當顯示，在錄製之前檢查電視類型並設定適當的螢幕模式 (「16:9 寬螢幕」)。➥ 第 72 頁 |
| 您無法使用音訊視訊纜線正確配音。 | · 未正確連接音訊視訊纜線。確保 AV 電纜線連接至正確的插孔，即連接至為攝錄放影機上影像配音的裝置的輸入插孔。➥ 第 88 頁 |

# troubleshooting

## Connecting to a computer

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| The computer does not recognize your camcorder. | • Disconnect any other USB device than the keyboard, mouse and camcorder from the computer.<br>• Disconnect the USB cable from the computer and camcorder, restart the computer, then connect it again correctly.<br>• You can not use the camcorder in DVD camcorder mode with a Macintosh. |
| Cannot play a movie file properly on a PC. | • Make sure you insert the connector in the correct direction, and connect the USB cable to the USB jack on your camcorder firmly.<br>• Disconnect the cable from the computer and camcorder, restart the computer.<br>Connect it again properly. |
| The image or sound on your camcorder is not played on your computer properly. | • Movie playback or sound may stop temporarily depending on your computer.<br>The movie or sound copied to your computer is not affected.<br>• If your camcorder is connected to a computer that does not support hi-speed USB(USB2.0), the image or sound may not be played correctly. The image and sound copied to your computer are not affected. |
| The playback screen is paused or distorted. | • Check the system requirements to play a movie. ➥page 90<br>• Exit other all applications running on the current computer.<br>• If a recorded movie is played on your camcorder connected to a computer, the image may not play smoothly, depending on the transfer speed. Please copy the file to your PC, then play it back. |

# 故障排除

## 連接至電腦

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 電腦不能識別攝錄放影機。 | · 從電腦上拔下鍵盤、滑鼠和攝錄放影機以外的任何其他 USB 裝置。<br>· 從電腦和攝錄放影機上拔下 USB 纜線，重新啟動電腦，然後再將它們正確連接。<br>· 在 Macintosh DVD 攝錄放影機模式下，您不能使用攝錄放影機。 |
| 無法在電腦上正確播放影片檔案。 | · 確定將連接器以正確的方向插入，然後將 USB 纜線穩固地連接至攝錄放影機上的 USB 插孔。<br>· 從電腦和攝錄放影機上拔下纜線，重新啟動電腦。<br>將它們正確連接。 |
| 攝錄放影機上的圖像或聲音在電腦上不能正常播放。 | · 影片播放或聲音根據您的電腦情況可能會暫時停止。<br>複製到電腦上的影片或聲音不會受到影響。<br>· 如果將攝錄放影機連接至不支援高速 USB(USB2.0) 的電腦上，則可能無法正確播放影像或聲音。複製到電腦上的影像和聲音不會受到影響。 |
| 播放畫面暫停或失真。 | · 檢查系統需求以播放影片。➥ 第 90 頁<br>· 在目前電腦上結束其他所有正在執行的應用程式。<br>· 如果將錄製的影片在連接至電腦的攝錄放影機上播放，影片可能播放不順暢，這取決於傳送速度。請將此檔案複製到您的電腦上，然後播放。 |

## Overall operations

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| The date and time are incorrect. | • Has the camcorder been left unused for a long period of time? The backup memory battery(button type battery) may be discharged. Replace with a new battery. ➥page 14 |

## Menu

| Symptom | Explanation/Solution |
|---|---|
| Menu items are grayed out. | • You cannot select grayed items in the current recording/playback mode.<br>• There are some functions you cannot activate simultaneously. The following list shows examples of unworkable combinations of functions and menu items.<br>• Menu cannot be used in the EASY.Q mode.<br>• The following menu cannot be used during recording; "**Anti-Shake(DIS)**," "**16:9 Wide**," "**Quality**," "**Wind Cut**," "**Digital Zoom**," "**Disc Manage**" |

| Cannot Use | Because of the following setting |
|---|---|
| Scene Mode (AE) | Exposure (Manual) |
| | Shutter (Manual) |
| | C. Nite |
| Digital Effect: Mosaic/ Emboss2/ Pastel1/ Pastel2 | Anti-Shake(DIS) |
| | C. Nite |
| Digital Effect: Mirror | 16:9 Wide |
| | Anti-Shake(DIS) |
| | C. NIte |

| Cannot Use | Because of the following setting |
|---|---|
| Digital Zoom | Digital Effect: Mosaic/Emboss2/ Pastel1/Pastel2/ Mirror |
| | Anti-Shake(DIS) |
| | C. Nite |
| Shutter (Manual) | C. Nite |
| Exposure (Manual) | C. Nite |
| C. Nite | Anti-Shake(DIS) |

## 整體操作

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 日期與時間不正確。 | · 攝錄放影機是否長時間擱置未用？備用記憶體電池( 鈕扣電池 ) 可能放電。更換新電池。➥ 第 14 頁 |

## 選單

| 症狀 | 說明 / 解決方案 |
|---|---|
| 選單項目呈灰色顯示。 | · 在目前錄製 / 播放模式下，您無法選擇灰色項目。<br>· 有些功能無法同時啟動。以下清單顯示了不能結合使用的功能和選單項目的範例。<br>· 無法在 EASY.Q 模式下使用選單。<br>· 無法在錄製時使用以下選單；「**Anti-Shake(DIS)**」、「**16:9 Wide**」、「**Quality**」、「**Wind Cut**」、「**Digital Zoom**」、「**Disc Manage**」 |

| 無法使用 | 因為以下設定 |
|---|---|
| Scene Mode(AE) | Exposure (Manual) |
| | Shutter (Manual) |
| | C. Nite |
| Digital Effect: Mosaic/ Emboss2/ Pastel1/ Pastel2 | Anti-Shake(DIS) |
| | C. Nite |
| Digital Effect:Mirror | 16:9 Wide |
| | Anti-Shake(DIS) |
| | C. NIte |

| 無法使用 | 因為以下設定 |
|---|---|
| Digital Zoom | Digital Effect: Mosaic/Emboss2/ Pastel1/Pastel2/ Mirror |
| | Anti-Shake(DIS) |
| | C. Nite |
| Shutter (Manual) | C. Nite |
| Exposure (Manual) | C. Nite |
| C. Nite | Anti-Shake(DIS) |

# specifications

## MODEL NAME: SC-DX100/ DX103/DX105

| | |
|---|---|
| **System** | |
| **Video signal** | NTSC |
| **Picture compression format** | MPEG-2 (Disc), MPEG-4 (Card) |
| **Image device** | CCD (Charge-coupled device) 800K pixels |
| **Lens** | F1.6 34x (Optical), 1200x (Digital) Electronic zoom lens |
| **Focal length** | f2.3 ~ 78.2mm |
| **Filter diameter** | Ø30.5 |
| **LCD screen/Viewfinder** | |
| **Size/dot number** | 2.7inches wide 112k |
| **LCD screen method** | TFT LCD |
| **Viewfinder** | Color LCD |
| **Connectors** | |
| **Composite output** | 1Vp-p (75 Ω terminated) |
| **Audio output** | -7.5dBs (600 Ω terminated) |
| **USB output** | Mini-B type connector |
| **General** | |
| **Power source** | DC 8.4V, Lithium-ion battery pack 7.4V |
| **Power source type** | Lithium Ion battery pack, Power supply (100V~240V) 50/60Hz |
| **Power consumption (Recording)** | 5.35W (LCD/Viewfinder) |
| **Operating temperature** | 0˚~40˚C (32˚F~104˚F) |
| **Storage temperature** | -20˚C ~ 60˚C (-4˚F ~ 140˚F) |
| **External dimensions** | Width 51.5 mm (2.03 inches), Height 87.5 mm (3.44 inches), Length 122 mm (4.80 inches) |
| **Weight** | 439 g (0.92 lb, 14.71 oz) (Except for lithium-ion battery pack) |
| **Internal MIC** | Omni-directional stereo microphone |
| **Remote control (SC-DX105 only)** | Indoors: greater than 49 ft (15 m) (straight line), outdoors: about 16.4 ft (5 m) (straight line) |

- These technical specifications and design may be changed without notice.

# 規格

## 機型名稱 : SC-DX100/ DX103/DX105

| | |
|---|---|
| **系統** | |
| **視訊訊號** | NTSC |
| **畫面壓縮格式** | MPEG-2（光碟）、MPEG-4（卡） |
| **影像裝置** | CCD（電荷耦合器）800K 像素 |
| **鏡頭** | F1.6 34x（光學），1200x（數位）<br>電子變焦鏡頭 |
| **焦距** | f2.3~78.2 公釐 |
| **濾鏡直徑** | Ø30.5 |
| **LCD 螢幕 / 觀景窗** | |
| **大小 / 點數** | 2.7 英吋寬 112k |
| **LCD 螢幕方法** | TFT LCD |
| **取景器** | 彩色 LCD |
| **連接器** | |
| **複合式輸出** | 1Vp-p（75Ω 終端） |
| **聲訊輸出** | -7.5dBs（600Ω 終端） |
| **USB 輸出** | Mini-B 類型連接器 |
| **一般資訊** | |
| **電源** | 直流電源 8.4V，鋰離子電池組 7.4V |
| **電源類型** | 鋰離子電池組，電源（100V~240V）50/60Hz |
| **電量（錄製）** | 5.35W（LCD/ 取景窗） |
| **操作溫度** | 0˚~40˚C (32˚F~104˚F) |
| **存放溫度** | -20˚C ~ 60˚C (-4˚F ~ 140˚F) |
| **外部尺寸** | 寬 51.5 公釐（2.03 英吋）、高 87.5 公釐（3.44 英吋）、長 122 公釐（4.80 英吋） |
| **重量** | 439 克（0.92 磅、14.71 盎司）（包括鋰離子電池組） |
| **內置麥克風** | 多向麥克風 |
| **遙控器 ( 僅限 SC-DX105)** | 室內：超過 49 英呎（15 公尺）（直線），<br>戶外：大約 16.4 英呎（5 公尺）（直線） |

- 這些技術規格與設計如有變更，恕不另行通知。

# contact SAMSUNG world wide

If you have any questions or comments relating to Samsung products, please contact the SAMSUNG customer care center.

# 在全球各地聯絡 SAMSUNG

如果您有任何問題或與 Samsung 產品相關的建議，請聯絡 SAMSUNG 客戶服務中心。

| Region | Country | Contact Center ☎ | Web Site |
|---|---|---|---|
| North America | CANADA | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com/ca |
| | MEXICO | 01-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| | U.S.A | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| Latin America | ARGENTINE | 0800-333-3733 | www.samsung.com/ar |
| | BRAZIL | 0800-124-421, 4004-0000 | www.samsung.com |
| | CHILE | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com/cl |
| | NICARAGUA | 00-1800-5077267 | |
| | HONDURAS | 800-7919267 | |
| | COSTA RICA | 0-800-507-7267 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | ECUADOR | 1-800-10-7267 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | EL SALVADOR | 800-6225 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | GUATEMALA | 1-800-299-0013 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | JAMAICA | 1-800-234-7267 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | PANAMA | 800-7267 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | PUERTO RICO | 1-800-682-3180 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | REP. DOMINICA | 1-800-751-2676 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | TRINIDAD & TOBAGO | 1-800-SAMSUNG(726-7864) | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | VENEZUELA | 0-800-100-5303 | www.samsung.com/latin |
| | COLOMBIA | 01-8000112112 | www.samsung.com.co |
| Europe | BELGIUM | 0032 (0)2 201 24 18 | www.samsung.com/be |
| | CZECH REPUBLIC | 844 000 844<br>Distributor pro Českou republiku :Samsung Zrt., česka organizační složka Vyskočilova 4, 14000 Praha 4 | www.samsung.com/cz |
| | DENMARK | 70 70 19 70 | www.samsung.com/dk |
| | FINLAND | 030-6227 515 | www.samsung.com/fi |
| | FRANCE | 3260 SAMSUNG (€ 0,15/Min), 08 25 08 65 65 (€ 0,15/Min) | www.samsung.com |
| | GERMANY | 01805 - SAMSUNG(726-7864 € 0,14/Min) | www.samsung.com |
| | HUNGARY | 06-80-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| | ITALIA | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| | LUXEMBURG | 0035 (0)2 261 03 710 | www.samsung.com/be |
| | NETHERLANDS | 0900-SAMSUNG (726-7864 € 0,10/Min | www.samsung.com/nl |
| | NORWAY | 815-56 480 | www.samsung.com/no |
| | POLAND | 0 801 801 881,022-607-93-33 | www.samsung.com/pl |
| | PORTUGAL | 80820-SAMSUNG(726-7864) | www.samsung.com/pt |
| | SLOVAKIA | 0800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com/sk |
| | SPAIN | 902 10 11 30 | www.samsung.com/ |
| | SWEDEN | 0771-400 200 | www.samsung.com/se |
| | U.K | 0845 SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com/ |
| | EIRE | 0818 717 100 | www.samsung.com/ie |
| | AUSTRIA | 0800-SAMSUNG(726-7864) | www.samsung.com/at |
| | SWITZERLAND | 0800-SAMSUNG(726-7864) | www.samsung.com/ch |
| CIS | RUSSIA | 8-800-555-55-55 | www.samsung.com |
| | KAZAHSTAN | 8-10-800-500-55-500 | www.samsung.kz |
| | UZBEKISTAN | 8-10-800-500-55-500 | www.samsung.uz |
| | KYRGYZSTAN | 00-800-500-55-500 | |
| | TADJIKISTAN | 8-10-800-500-55-500 | |
| | UKRAINE | 8-800-502-0000 | www.samsung.com |
| | LITHUANIA | 8-800-77777 | www.samsung.lt |
| | LATVIA | 800-7267 | www.samsung.com/lv |
| | ESTONIA | 800-7267 | www.samsung.ee |
| Asia Pacific | AUSTRALIA | 1300 362 603 | www.samsung.com |
| | NEW ZEALAND | 0800SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com/nz |
| | CHINA | 800-810-5858, 010-6475 1880 | www.samsung.com |
| | HONG KONG | 3698 - 4698 | www.samsung.com/hk |
| | INDIA | 3030 8282, 1800 110011 | www.samsung.com |
| | INDONESIA | 0800-112-8888 | www.samsung.com |
| | JAPAN | 0120-327-527 | www.samsung.com/jp |
| | MALAYSIA | 1800-88-9999 | www.samsung.com/my |
| | PHILIPPINES | 1800-10-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com/ph |
| | SINGAPORE | 1800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| | THAILAND | 1800-29-3232, 02-689-3232 | www.samsung.com |
| | TAIWAN | 0800-329-999 | www.samsung.com/tw |
| | VIETNAM | 1 800 588 889 | www.samsung.com |
| Middle East & Africa | TURKEY | 444 77 11 | www.samsung.com |
| | SOUTH AFRICA | 0860-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| | U.A.E | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864), 8000-4726 | www.samsung.com |

## RoHS compliant

Our product complies with “The Restriction Of the use of certain Hazardous Substances in electrical and electronic equipment,” and we do not use the 6 hazardous materials- Cadmium(Cd), Lead (Pb), Mercury (Hg), Hexavalent Chromium (Cr +6), Poly Brominated Biphenyls (PBBs), Poly Brominated Diphenyl Ethers(PBDEs)- in our products.

---

## 符合 RoHS 標準

我們的產品符合「在電子與電氣設備中使用有害化學物質之管制條例」標準，產品中絕對不含下列 6 種有害化學物質：鎘（Cd）、鉛（Pb）、水銀（Hg）、六價鉻（Cr+6）、多溴聯苯類（PBBs）、以及多溴聯苯醚類（PBDEs）。

Code No. AD68-02550E-00